



PersianPod101.com

LEVEL 2

LEARN PERSIAN BUNDLE

Persian for Beginners



2 IN 1

PersianPod101.com

If You Love the **Persian Language**, Then You'll Love This!

You can download these bonus conversation-based PDF cheat sheets at PersianPod101.com. Just sign up for a Free Lifetime Account and instant access today.

Get 30+ PersianPod101.com PDF Cheat Sheets for Beginners...for **FREE**.



- Learn Persian for Common Topics: Weather, Family, Hobbies & More
- Speak More Persian with Basic Conversation Guidest
- Boost Your Persian Vocabulary Fast
- Print & Use as Physical Study Material

You can download these bonus conversation-based PDF cheat sheets at PersianPod101.com.

Just sign up for a **Free Lifetime Account** and instant access today.

CLICK HERE

PersianPod101.com

The Fastest, Easiest, and Most Fun Way to Learn Persian

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #1

Talking About School in Persian

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#1

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. فریبا : کلاس دیروزت چطور بود؟
2. فرهاد : بد نبود ولی فکر کنم حذفش کنم.
3. فریبا : چرا؟ من می تونم (می توانم) به تو کمک کنم.
4. فرهاد : نمی تونم (نمی توانم) سر وقت به کلاس برسم چون کلاس خیلی زود شروع میشه (میشود).
5. فریبا : می تونی (می توانی) با ماشین خودت بری (بروی) تا زودتر برسی.
6. فرهاد : نه، به (یک) ساعت زمان می بره (می برد) جای پارک پیدا کنم.
7. فریبا : و نیم ساعت باقیمونده رو (باقیمانده را) هم باید چرت بزنی.

ROMANIZATION

1. Faribaa : kelaas-e diroozat chetor bood?
2. Farhaad : bad nabood, vali fekr konam hazfesh konam.
3. Faribaa : cheraa? man mitoonam (mitavaanam) be to komak konam.
4. Farhaad : nemitooan (nemitavaanam) sar-e vaqt be kelaas beresam chon kelaas kheyli zood shoroo mishe (mishavad).
5. Faribaa : mitooni (mitavaani) baa maashin-e khodet beri (beravi) taa zoodtar beresi.
6. Farhaad : na, ye (yek) saa'at zamaan mibare (mibarad) jaay-e paark peydaa konam.
7. Faribaa : va nim saa'at-e baaqimoonda ro ham (baaqimaande raa ham) baayad chort bezani.

ENGLISH

1. Fariba : How was your class yesterday?
2. Farhad : Not bad, but I think I'll drop it.
3. Fariba : Why? I can help you.
4. Farhad : I can't get to the class on time because class starts too early.
5. Fariba : You can go with your car to get there earlier.
6. Farhad : No, it takes me an hour to find a parking space.
7. Fariba : And you must doze off the remaining half an hour too.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
شلوغ	sholooq	crowded	adjective
دانشگاه	daaneshgaah	university	noun
سخت	sakht	hard, difficult	adjective , adverb
زمان بردن	zamaan bordan	to take time	verb
چرت زدن	chort zadan	to take a nap, to doze off	verb
دیروز	dirooz	yesterday	adverb
حذف کردن	hazf kardan	to drop	verb
باقیمانده	baaqimaande	remaining	adjective
جای پارک	jaay-e paark	parking space	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>بازار بزرگ تهران همیشه شلوغ است. <i>baazaar-e bozorg-e tehraan hamisheh sholoogh ast.</i> Tehran's Grand Bazaar is always busy.</p>	<p>آن مغازه همیشه شلوغ است. <i>aan maghaaze hamishe sholoogh ast.</i> That store is always crowded.</p>
<p>دانشگاه صنعتی شریف بهترین دانشگاه ایران است. <i>daaneshgaah-e san'ati-ye sharif behtarin daaneshgaah-e iraan ast.</i> Sharif University of Technology is Iran's best university.</p>	<p>امتحان ریاضی خیلی سخت بود. <i>emtehaan-e riyaaзи kheili sakht bood.</i> The math exam was very difficult.</p>
<p>پختن غذای سالم و خوشمزه زمان میبرد. <i>pokhtan-e ghazaay-e saalem va khoshmazeh zamaan mibarad.</i> It takes time to cook healthy and delicious food.</p>	<p>نیم ساعت چرت زدن بعد از ناهار برای سلامتی خوب است. <i>nim sa'at chort zadan b'ad az naahaar baraay-e salaamati khoob ast.</i> A half an hour nap after lunch is good for one's health.</p>
<p>دیروز خیلی گرم بود، ولی امروز بد نیست. <i>dirooz kheily garm bood, vali emrooz bad nsit.</i> It was very hot yesterday, but today is not bad.</p>	<p>حذف کردن سیگار از زندگی عمر را طولانی میکند. <i>hazf kardan-e sigaar az zendegi omr raa toolani mikonad.</i> Quitting smoking cigarettes prolongs life. (Lit. Removing cigarettes from life prolongs life.)</p>

قهوه‌هایی که از صبح باقیمانده بود خیلی تلخ بود.

qahve-i ke az sobh baaqimaande bood kheyli talkh bood.

The coffee that was remained from morning was very bitter.

جای پارک در مرکز شهر خیلی گران است.

jaay-e paark dar markaz-e shahr kheyli geraan ast.

Parking in downtown is too expensive.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

سخته

sakhte

"It is hard"

Sakhte, سخته, is the short form of سخت است, **sakht ast**. It means "It is hard." سخت, **sakht**, ("hard") + است, **ast**, ("is") = سخت است, **sakht ast**, ("It is hard").

We use this sentence when something is hard, either physically or mentally. Examples : این امتحان سخت بود, **in emtehaan sakht bood**, ("This exam was difficult"), این چوب سخت است, **in choob sakht ast**, ("This wood is hard"). In Persian, we use the word "hard" to describe both the hardness of solid materials and difficult subjects, but for non-solid materials (ex. fruits or candies, muscles, the tightness of a screw, clothes or shoes, the hardness of a chair or piece of furniture) we use the word سفت, **seft**, which also means "hard." Example: کباب سفت بود, **kabaab seft bood**, ("The kebab was hard").

For example:

1. این امتحان سخت بود.

ein emtehaan sakht bood.

"This exam was difficult."

چرت زدن

chort zadan

"to take a nap, to doze off"

Chort, "nap," "dozing off" + **zadan**, "to hit," to take, "to do" = چرت زدن, **chort zadan**, "to take a nap"

This is a colloquialism, which native speakers use. As for چرت, **chort**, you can use the verb زدن, **zadan** ("to hit" or "to do"). چرت زدن, **chort zadan** ("to take a nap") can also mean "to doze off" when you're not actually taking a nap. We can always use this phrase when taking a nap or dozing off.

Drug addicts, especially those who use opium, are always dozing off, so in Persian چرتی, **chorti** is a synonym for "an opium addict."

For example:

1. پدر بعد از ناهار نیم ساعت چرت زد.

pedar b'ad az naahaar nim saa'at chort zad.

"Father took a nap after lunch for half an hour."

زمان بردن

zamaan bordan

"to take time"

zaman, "time" + **bordan**, "to carry" or "to take" = زمان بردن, **zaman bordan**, "to take times."

We can use this phrase on two occasions: 1) when something takes a long time to achieve or make, and 2) when we want to indicate how long it takes to do, make, or build something. It does not have to be a long time. We can use this phrase without any restrictions.

Examples:

1. *saakhtan-e in pol dah saal zaman bord,*
"Building this bridge took ten years."
2. *pokhtan-e berenj faghat bist daghighah zaman mibarad,*
"Cooking rice just takes 20 minutes."

For example:

1. بدنسازی زمان می برد.
badansaazi zamaan mibarad.
"Bodybuilding takes time."

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Verbs: Past Tense and "Must"

چرا؟ من می تونم (می توانم) به تو کمک کنم.
cheraa? man mitoonam (mitavaanam) be to komak konam.
"Why? I can help you."

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. Use the Past Tense
 2. Use The Verb "Must" in Persian
-

1. Past Tense

There are no regular or irregular verbs in Persian, unlike English language. To make a past tense from infinitive verbs, see the table below.

In Persian all the infinitives end in *-tan*(تن) or *-dan*(دن) .

The **past tense** is made simply by removing the *-an* (ن) from the infinitive and adding past endings. Personal endings for past tense are:

Person	Persian	Romanization	Example in Persian	Romanization	English
1st sing.	م	<i>m</i>	رفتم	<i>raftam</i>	"I went"
2nd sing.	ی	<i>i</i>	رفتی	<i>rafti</i>	"You went"
3rd sing.	N/A	N/A	رفت	<i>raft</i>	"He (She) went"
1st pl.	یم	<i>im</i>	رفتیم	<i>raftim</i>	"We went"
2nd pl.	ید	<i>id</i>	رفتید	<i>raftid</i>	"You went"
3rd pl.	ند	<i>and</i>	رفتند	<i>raftand</i>	"They went"

Note: the singular third person doesn't get a personal ending.

Conjugation chart

Verb "to go", رفتن, *raftan*

Persian	Romanization	English
رفتم	<i>raftam</i>	"I went"
رفتی	<i>rafti</i>	"You went"
رفت	<i>raft</i>	"He or She went"
رفتیم	<i>raftim</i>	"We went"
رفتید	<i>raftid</i>	"You went" plural
رفتند	<i>raftand</i>	"They went"

Verb "to tell", گفتن, *goftan*

Persian	Romanization	English
گفتم	<i>goftam</i>	I told
گفتی	<i>gofti</i>	You told
گفت	<i>goft</i>	he(She) told
گفتیم	<i>goftim</i>	We told
گفتید	<i>goftid</i>	You told
گفتند	<i>goftand</i>	They told

Verb "to give", دادن, *daadan*

Persian	Romanization	English
دادم	<i>daadam</i>	I gave
دادی	<i>daadi</i>	You gave
داد	<i>daad</i>	He(She) gave
دادیم	<i>daadim</i>	We gave
دادید	<i>daadid</i>	You gave
دادند	<i>daadand</i>	They gave

Verb "to arrive", رسیدن, *residan*

Persian	Romanization	English
رسیدم	<i>residam</i>	I arrived
رسیدی	<i>residi</i>	You arrived
رسید	<i>resid</i>	He(She) arrived
رسیدیم	<i>residim</i>	We arrived
رسیدید	<i>residid</i>	You arrived
رسیدند	<i>residand</i>	They arrived

Verb "to eat", خوردن, *khordan*

Persian	Romanization	English
خوردم	<i>khordam</i>	I ate
خوردی	<i>khordi</i>	You ate
خورد	<i>khord</i>	He(She) ate
خوردیم	<i>khordim</i>	We ate
خوردید	<i>khordid</i>	You ate
خوردند	<i>khordand</i>	They ate

Verb "to do", کردن, *kardan*

Persian	Romanization	English
کردم	<i>kardam</i>	I did
کردی	<i>kardi</i>	You did
کرد	<i>kard</i>	He(She) did
کردیم	<i>kardim</i>	We did
کردید	<i>kardid</i>	You did
کردند	<i>kardand</i>	They did

Verb "to see", دیدن, *didan*

Persian	Romanization	English
دیدم	<i>didam</i>	I saw
دیدی	<i>didi</i>	You saw
دید	<i>did</i>	He(She)saw
دیدیم	<i>didim</i>	We saw
دیدید	<i>didid</i>	You saw
دیدند	<i>didand</i>	They saw

Verb "to take", بردن, *bordan*

Persian	Romanization	English
بردم	<i>bordam</i>	I took
بردی	<i>bordi</i>	You took
برد	<i>bord</i>	He(She) took
بردیم	<i>bordim</i>	We took
بردید	<i>bordid</i>	You took
بردند	<i>bordand</i>	They took

Examples

Persian	Romanization	English
این امتحان سخت بود.	<i>in emtehaan sakht bood.</i>	"This exam was difficult."
پدر بعد از ناهار نیم ساعت چرت زد.	<i>pedar b'ad az naahaar nim saa'at chort zad.</i>	"Father took a nap after lunch for half an hour."
مادر بعد از خرید به خانه برگشت.	<i>maadar b'ad az kharid be khaane bargasht.</i>	"Mother got back home after shopping."

2. The Verb "Must" in Persian

baayad, باید, ("must") can be considered an adverb or an auxiliary verb.

There is no conjugation for the verb باید, *baayad*, "must."

We commonly use this sentence pattern:

Subject + *baayad* + object + main verb

Note: Sometimes we drop subject because the suffix at the end of verb represents the subject. So, in order to make the sentence shorter, we can drop the subject and start the sentence with باید, *baayad* ("must"). Just like the first sample sentence below, م, *m* is the suffix for the main verb ببینم, *bebinam* ("to see by me"), so we know the subject is من, *man*, ("I").

Sample sentences

1. باید هر روز تو را ببینم.
baayad har rooz to raa bebinam.
"I must see you every day."
2. من باید به ایران برگردم.
man baayad be iraan bargardam.
"I must go back to Iran."
3. شما باید به خانه بروید.
shomaa baayad be khaane beravid
"You must go home."

Examples from the Dialogue

1. (نمی توانم) سر وقت به کلاس برسم چون کلاس خیلی زود شروع میشه (می شود).
nemitoonam (nemitavaanam) sar-e vaqt be kelaas beresam chon kelaas kheyli zood shoroo mishe (mishavad).
"I can't get to the class on time because class starts too early."
2. می تونی (می توانی) با ماشین خودت بری (بروی) تا زودتر برسی.
mitooni (mitavaani) baa maashin-e khodet beri (beravi) taa zoodtar beresi.
"You can go with your car to get there earlier."

Sample Sentences

1. دیروز هوا گرم بود.
dirooz havaa garm bood.
"Yesterday the weather was warm."
2. من به مدرسه رفتم.
man be madrese raftam.
"I went to school."
3. پدر شام خورد و خوابید.
pedar shaam khord va khaabid.
"Father dined and slept."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Heavy traffic in Tehran

With 8.2 million permanent residents and a couple of millions visitors every day, Tehran is one of the busiest and most polluted cities in the Middle East. In order to get to work people must wake up as early as they can. The traffic control plan is one of the most effective solutions for Tehran's heavy traffic and air pollution. It was introduced in late 80's, and Tehran's traffic plan as well as new metro lines have helped a lot to improve Tehran's heavy traffic problem. Based on traffic plan of Tehran, during rush hours some streets are closed to private cars but are open to public transportation vehicles, such as buses and taxis. Furthermore, people receive free metro tickets to encourage them to ride on buses or metro trains. There are free bicycles for those who prefer to ride a bicycle to work, and the government also provides intensive and lower taxes on hybrid cars. Billboard ads and TV programs inform people of the danger of air pollution in the city, and statistics on the quality of air is provided on a daily basis. As a result of these efforts in the past few years, today Tehran enjoys better air quality. While it's the best and Tehran remains one of the most polluted cities of Asia, little by little it is improving.

Useful expression

1. طرح ترافیک

tarh-e teraafic

"traffic plan"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #2

Going on a Shopping Trip in Iran

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#2

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. خانم میلانی : می‌خوام (می‌خواهم) برم (بروم) کفشام رو (کفش‌هایم را) عوض کنم و برای هدی هم کادو بخرم توهم میای (می‌آیی)؟
2. فرهاد : کجا می‌خوای (می‌خواهی) بری (بروی)؟
3. خانم میلانی : ونک شاید هم تجربیش.
4. فرهاد : این دامنا (دامن‌ها) چطور هستن (هستند)؟ می‌خوای که یه (یک) آبی لاجوردی و یه (یک) سفید هم برایش بخریم؟
5. خانم میلانی : خوب نیست، چاق نشونش (نشانش) میده (می‌دهد).
6. فرهاد : این بلوز چی؟ نارنجی هم دوست داره (دارد).
7. خانم میلانی : نه ، ارزون (ارزان) به نظر میاد (می‌آید).
8. خانم میلانی : این خوبه (خوب است) اتفاقاً شال سبز لازم داره (دارد).
9. خانم میلانی : ولی اینا (این‌ها) که برداشتی خیلی به هم میان (می‌آیند).
10. فرهاد : آره به کفشی که هفته پیش خریده هم خیلی میان (می‌آیند).

ROMANIZATION

1. Khanom-e Milaani : mikhaam (mikhaaham) beram(beravam) kafshhaamo (kafsh haa yam raa) avaz konam-o (va) baraay-e hodaa ham kaado bekharam, to ham miyaa (mi aayi)?
2. Simaa : kojaa mikhaai (mikhaahi) beri (beravi)?
3. Khanom-e Milaani : vanak, shaayad ham tajrish.
4. Simaa : in daamanaa (daamanhaa) chetor hastan (hastand)? mikhaay ke ye (yek) aabi-ye laajevardi-o (va) ye (yek) sefid ham baraash bekharim?
5. Khanom-e Milaani : khoob nist chaaq neshoonesh (neshanash) mide (midahad).
6. Simaa : in bolooz chi? naarenji ham doost daare (daarad).
7. Khanom-e Milaani : na, arzoon (arzaan) be nazar miyaad (mi aayad).
8. Khanom-e Milaani : in khoobe (khoob ast) etefaaqan shaal-e sabz laazem daare (daarad).
9. Khanom-e Milaani : vali inaa (inhaa) ke bardaashti kheyli be ham miyaan (mi aayand).
10. Simaa : aare be kafshi ke hafteye pish kharide ham kheyli miyaan (miaayand).

ENGLISH

1. Mrs. Milani : I'm going to change my shoes and buy Hoda a present too; do you want to come along?
2. Farhad : Where are you going?
3. Mrs. Milani : Vanak, maybe Tajrish.
4. Farhad : How are these skirts? Do you want us to buy an ultramarine blue and a white one for her?
5. Mrs. Milani : Not good, it makes her look fat.
6. Farhad : How about this blouse? She loves orange too!
7. Mrs. Milani : No, it looks cheap!
8. Mrs. Milani : This is good! She happens to need a green scarf!
9. Mrs. Milani : But these ones you took go very well together.
10. Farhad : They go very well with the shoes she got last week as well!

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
آبی لاجوردی	aabi-ye laajevardi	ultramarine blue	adjective
دامن	daaman	skirt	noun
هفته پیش	hafte-ye pish	last week	adverb
به هم آمدن	be ham aamadan	to go together	phrase
بلوز	bolooz	blouse	noun
ارزان به نظر آمدن	arzaan be nazar aamadan	to look cheap	phrase
کادو	kaado	present, gift	noun
کفش (یک جفت کفش)	kafsh (yek joft kafsh)	shoes (one pair of shoes)	noun
چاق	chaaq	fat, obese	adjective
خریدن	kharidan	to buy	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>لباس فرم کارگران شرکت نفت ایران شلوار ابی لاجوردی با پیراهن سفید است.</p> <p><i>lebaas-e form-e kaargaraan-e sherkat-e naft-e iraan shalvaar-e aabi-ye laajevardi baa piraahan-e sefid ast.</i></p> <p>The Iranian Oil Company worker's uniform is ultramarine blue pants with a white shirt.</p>	<p>دامن صورتی سیر</p> <p><i>daamane soorati-e sir</i></p> <p>dark pink skirt</p>
<p>او یک دامن زرد پوشیده است.</p> <p><i>oo yek daaman-e zard pooshide ast.</i></p> <p>She is wearing a yellow skirt.</p>	<p>من دامن را به شلوار ترجیح میدهم.</p> <p><i>man daaman raa be shalvaar tarjih midaham.</i></p> <p>I prefer skirts to pants.</p>
<p>یک دامن نو خریدم.</p> <p><i>yek daaman-e no kharidam.</i></p> <p>I bought a new skirt.</p>	<p>هفته پیش رفتیم کنار دریا.</p> <p><i>hafte-ye pish raftim kenaar-e daryaa.</i></p> <p>Last week, we went to the seaside (beach).</p>
<p>این کفش سفید به شلوار جین خوب می‌آید.</p> <p><i>in kafsh-e sefid be shalvaar-e jin khoob miyaad (miaayad).</i></p> <p>These white shoes look good with jean pants.</p>	<p>تو این هوای گرم بلوز آستین کوتاه بهتر است.</p> <p><i>too in havaa-ye garm bolooz-e aastin kootaah behtar ast.</i></p> <p>In this warm weather, a short-sleeved blouse is better.</p>
<p>این شلوار ارزان به نظر می‌آید.</p> <p><i>in shalvaar arzaan be nazar miyaad(mi aayad).</i></p> <p>These pants look cheap.</p>	<p>این کادو از طرف خاله عروس خانم (است).</p> <p><i>in kaado az taraf-e khaale-ye aroos khaanoome (ast).</i></p> <p>This gift is from the bride's aunt.</p>
<p>من کادو خریدن را دوست دارم.</p> <p><i>man kaado kharidan raa doost daaram.</i></p> <p>I love buying gifts.</p>	<p>این کفشی که دیروز خریدم یک کم بزرگ است.</p> <p><i>in kasfshi ke dirooz kharidam yek kam bozorg ast.</i></p> <p>The shoes I bought yesterday are a little big.</p>
<p>چاق بودن برای سلامتی خوب نیست.</p> <p><i>chaaq boodan baraay-e salaamati khoob nist.</i></p> <p>Being obese is not good for (one's) health.</p>	<p>من همیشه وقتی گرسنه هستم خوراکی زیاد می‌خرم.</p> <p><i>man hamishe vaqti gorosne hastam khoraaki ziyaad mikharam.</i></p> <p>I always buy a lot of food when I am hungry.</p>
<p>می‌خواهم یک اتومبیل جدید بخرم.</p> <p><i>mikhaaham yek otomobil-e jadid bekham.</i></p> <p>I want to buy a new car.</p>	<p>شما باید سه تا بخرید اگر بخواهید تخفیف بگیرید.</p> <p><i>shomaa baayad se taa bekharid agar bekhaahid takhfif begirid.</i></p> <p>You have to buy three if you want to get the discount.</p>
<p>چرا دفعه بعد مواد غذایی بیشتری نمی‌خری؟</p> <p><i>cheraa daf'eye ba'd mavaad-e ghazaayi-ye bishtari nemikhari?</i></p> <p>Why don't you buy more groceries next time?</p>	<p>اون برای سگش به خونه کنار رودخانه می‌خرد.</p> <p><i>oon baraay-e sagesh ye khoone kenaar-e roodkhoone mikhare.</i></p> <p>He will buy a house next to the river for his dog.</p>

او می خواهد یک ماشین تندرو بخرد.

oo mikhaahad yek maashin-e tondro bekharad.

He wants to buy a fast car.

من همیشه وقتی گرسنه هستم مواد غذایی زیاد می خرم.

man hamishe vaqti gorosne hastam mavvad-e ghazaayi ziyaad mikharam.

I always buy too many groceries when I am hungry.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

به هم آمدن

beh ham aamadan

"to go together"

Beh, "to" + **ham**, "each," "each other" + **aamadan** "to come" = به هم آمدن, **beh ham aamadan** - literally means "to each other come" , "to go together."

Examples:

1. این کت و شلوار سفید به من میاد.
in kot o shalvaar-e sefid beh man miyaad
"This white suit looks good on me."

2. شیرین و جمشید خیلی به هم میاند.
shirin va jamshid kheili beh ham miyaand
"Shirin and Jamshid look very good together."

For example:

1. این کفش سفید و شلوار آبی خیلی به هم میاند.
in kafsh-e sefid va shalvaar-e aabi kheili beh ham miyaand.
"These white shoes and blue jeans go together very well."

The present tense of the verb آمدن, **aamadan** "to come" conjugates in written Persian as follows:

می آیم	Mi aayam	I come
می آیی	Mi aayi	You come
می آید	Mi aayad	He (She) come
می آییم	Mi aayim	We come
می آید	Mi aayid	You come
می آیند	Mi aayand	They come

amad+ personal endings

Examples:

1. من به خانه می آیم.
man beh khaaneh mi aayam.
"I come home."

2. او به شیراز می آید.
oo beh shiraaaz mi aayad.
"He (She) comes to Shiraz."

3. آنها به اینجا می آیند.
aanhaa beh injaa mi aayand.
"They come here."

ارزان به نظر آمدن
arzaan beh nazar aamadan.
"to look cheap."

Arzaan "cheap" + **beh nazar aamadan**, "to come to mind," "to look" = ارزان به نظر آمدن, **arzaan beh nazar aamadan**, "to look cheap."

We use this phrase when we are shopping and we see things that do not look elegant or not made of good materials. There is no restriction of using this phrase. Instead of ارزان به نظر آمدن, **arzaan beh nazar aamadan** ("to look cheap"), we can use کلاس پایینه, **kelaas paaeineh** ("low class")

Example:

1. این ماشین کلاس پایینه.
in maashin kelas paaeineh
"This car is low class", "This car looks cheap."

For example:

1. این ساعت ارزان به نظر میاد.
in saa'at arzaan beh nazar miyaad.
"This watch looks cheap."

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is the Possessive and Plural Forms

می خوام (می خواهم) برم (بروم) کفشام رو (کفش هایم را) عوض کنم و برای هدی هم کادو بخرم توهم میای (می آیی)?
mikhaam (mikhaaham) beram (beravam) kafshaam ro (kafash haa yam raa) avaz konam-o (va) baraaye hodaa ham kaado bekharam, to ham miyaay(miaayi)?
"I'm going to change my shoes and buy Hoda a present too; do you want to come along?"

In this lesson, we will learn how to use:

1. Possessive Forms
2. Plural Nouns

1. Possessive Forms

Possessive form in Persian is very easy to make. Depending on how you want to say it, there are two ways:

1- We add an **-e** after the object, to be immediately followed by the subject. Here is an example:

1. کفش من
kafsh-e man
"my shoes"

We add an **-e** sound between a noun (of a thing or entity) and another noun (or adjective). This shows that that thing or entity belongs to the subject ,or it has one of its qualities.

For example:

1. کتاب سیما
ketaab-e simaa
"Sima's book"

or

2. کتاب آبی
ketaab-e aabi
"blue book"

2- Add the word **maal**, ("belongs/belong") after the object + **e** + subject. In other words, between the object and subject. Here is an example:

1. این کفش مال من است.
in kafsh maal-e man ast.
"This shoe belongs to me."

For more examples, please look at sample sentences below.

How to form possessive pronouns using the word **maal**:

Persian	Romanization	Translation
مال من	<i>maal-e man</i>	"mine"
مال تو	<i>maal-e to</i>	"yours"
مال او	<i>maal-e oo</i>	"his," "hers"
مال ما	<i>maal-e maa</i>	"ours"
مال شما	<i>maal-e shomaa</i>	"yours"
مال آنها	<i>maal-e aanhaa</i>	"theirs"

2. Plural Nouns

For most of the words in Persian, you can make the plural by adding the suffix ها, *haa*. As in

1. کتابها
ketaab-haa
"books"
2. ماشینها
maashin-haa

"cars"

3. کفش‌ها

kafsh-haa

"shoes"

When speaking, we sometimes drop the **h** sound and say **ketaabaa**, **maashinaa** and **kafshaa**.

Here are more examples:

Persian	Romanization	Translation
خانه‌ها	<i>khaane-haa</i>	"houses"
انسان‌ها	<i>ensaan-haa</i>	"humans"
بچه‌ها	<i>bechche-haa</i>	"kids"
شرکت‌ها	<i>sherkat-haa</i>	"companies"
توپ‌ها	<i>toop-haa</i>	"balls"
مدادها	<i>medaad-haa</i>	"pencils"

Examples from the Dialogue

- این دامنا (دامن‌ها) چطور هستن (هستند)? می‌خوای که به (یک) آبی لاجوردی و به (یک) سفید برایش بخریم؟
in daamanaa (daaman-haa) chetor hastan (hastand)? mikhaay ke ye (yek) aabi-ye laajevardi-yo (va) ye (yek) sefid baraash bekharim?
"How are these skirts? Do you want us to buy an ultramarine blue and a white for her?"
- ولی اینا (این‌ها) که برداشتی خیلی به هم میان (می‌آیند).
vali inaa (in-haa) ke bardaashti kheyli be ham miyaan (mi aayand).
"But these ones you took go very well together."

Sample sentences

- کفش‌های من کجا هستند؟
kafsh-haa-ye man kojaa hastand?
"Where are my shoes?"
- این ماشین‌ها مال من هستند.
in maashin-haa maal-e man hastand.
"These cars belong to me"
- همهٔ این کتاب‌ها مال من هستند.
hame-ye in ketaab-haa maal-e man hastand.
"All these books belong to me."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Vali asr Street

Valiasr Street is the longest street in the Middle East. Its tall cedar trees plus high-class shopping centers and the best restaurants in Tehran are well-known by local residents and Iranians as well as foreign tourists. There are a few nice four and five-star hotels on Valiasr Street, including Hotel Homa, which is owned and operated by Iran Air.

Useful expression

1. خیابان ولی عصر.

khyaabaan-e valiasr

"Valiasr Street"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #3

Talking About Reasons in Persian

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#3

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. خانم میلانی : اولین باره (بار است) تشریف آوردین (آوردید) ایران؟
2. جرج : بله اومدم (آمدم) با خانواده نامزدم بیشتر آشنا بشم (بشوم).
3. خانم میلانی : به سلامتی چند وقت اینجا می‌مونین (می‌مانید)؟
4. جرج : سه هفته.
5. خانم میلانی : نامزدتون (نامزدتان) اهل تهرانه (تهران است)؟
6. جرج : نامزدم تهرانی هست ولی اصفهان و شیراز را هم می‌بینم.
7. خانم میلانی : شما اهل کجا هستید؟
8. جرج : من اهل فلوریدا هستم.
9. خانم میلانی : چقدر فارسی شما خوبه (خوب است), نامزد شما باید معلم خوبی باشه (باشد).
10. جرج : ممنون البته من فارسی را خودم آنلاین یاد می‌گیرم.

ROMANIZATION

1. Khanoom-e Milaani : avalin baare (baar ast) tashrif aavordin (aavardid) iraan?
2. Jorj : bale oomadam (aamadam) baa khaanevaade-ye naamzadam bishtar aashenaa besham(beshavam).
3. Khanoom-e Milaani : be salaamati chand vaqt 'injaa mimoonid (mimaanid)?
4. Jorj : se hafte.
5. Khanoom-e Milaani : naamzadeton (naamzadetaan) ahl-e tehraane (tehraan ast)?
6. Jorj : naamzadam tehraani hast vali esfahaan-o shiraaz raa ham mibinim.
7. Khanoom-e Milaani : shomaa ahl-e kojaa hastid?
8. Jorj : man ahl-e feloridaa hastam.
9. Khanoom-e Milaani : cheqadr faarsi-ye shomaa khoobe (khoob ast), naamzad-e shomaa baayad mo'Allem-e khoobi baashe (baashad).
10. Jorj : mamnoon albate man faarsi raa khodam aanlaain yaad migiram.

ENGLISH

1. Mrs. Ahmadi : Is this the first time you have come to Iran?
2. George : Yes, I have come to get to know my fiance's family better.
3. Mrs. Ahmadi : Good, how long are you going to stay here?
4. George : Three weeks.
5. Mrs. Ahmadi : Is your fiance from Tehran?
6. George : My fiance is from Tehran, but I'm going to see Isfahan and Shiraz too.
7. Mrs. Ahmadi : Where are you from?
8. George : I'm from Florida.
9. Mrs. Ahmadi : How good your Farsi is! Your fiance must be a good teacher!
10. George : Thanks! I'm learning Persian online by myself though.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
نامزد	naamzad	fiancee, candidate	noun
اهل جایی بودن	ahl-e jaayi boodan	to be from somewhere	phrase
ماندن	maandan	to stay, to stay over	verb
چقدر	cheqadr	how much	phrase
خانواده	Khaanevaade	family	noun
اول	avval	first	adverb
به سلامتی	be salaamati	good, cheers, to the good health	adjective
خودم, تنهایی	khodam, tanhaayi	by myself	pronoun
معلم	mo'allem	teacher	noun
یاد گرفتن	yaad gereftan	to learn	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>دو نفر از همکاران ما نامزد ریاست شرکت شدند.</p> <p><i>do nafar az hamkaaraan-e maa namzad-e riyaaat-e sherkat shodand.</i></p> <p>Two of our colleagues were nominated for president.</p>	<p>او اهل شیراز است.</p> <p><i>oo ahl-e shiraaaz ast.</i></p> <p>He(or She) is from Shiraz.</p>
--	---

<p>برای ماندن در خانه دوستم از مادر اجازه گرفتم.</p> <p><i>baraaye maandan dar khaane-ye doostam az maadar ejaaze gereftam.</i></p> <p>I got Mother's permission to stay over at my friend's house.</p>	<p>هوای بیرون چقدر سرد است.</p> <p><i>havaaye biroon cheqadr sard ast.</i></p> <p>How cold it is outside!</p>
<p>اعضای خانواده در حال خوردن شام هستند.</p> <p><i>a'zaaye khaanevaadeh dar haale khordan-e shaam hastand.</i></p> <p>The family is eating dinner.</p>	<p>خانواده شاد</p> <p><i>khaanevaadey-e shaad</i></p> <p>happy family</p>
<p>اعضای خانواده دارند نهار می خورند.</p> <p><i>a'zaay-e khaanevaadeh daarand naahaar mikhorand.</i></p> <p>The family is having lunch.</p>	<p>اعضای خانواده برای عکس لیخند می زنند.</p> <p><i>a'zaaye khaanevaadeh baraaye aks labkhand mizanand.</i></p> <p>The family is smiling for the picture.</p>
<p>عکس های خانوداگی</p> <p><i>aks-haaye khaanevaadegi</i></p> <p>family picture</p>	<p>خانواده سلطنتی گردهمایی مهمی خواهند داشت .</p> <p><i>khaanevaade-ye saltanati gerdehamaayi-ye mohemmi khaahand daasht.</i></p> <p>The Royal Family will have an important reunion.</p>
<p>من در مسابقه دو اول شدم.</p> <p><i>man dar mosaabeqe-ye do avval shodam.</i></p> <p>In the running competition, I came in the first place.</p>	<p>اول متن را بخوانید و سپس به سوالات پاسخ بدهید.</p> <p><i>avval matn raa bekhaanid va sepas be so'aalaat paasokh bedahid.</i></p> <p>Read the text first and then answer the questions.</p>
<p>به سلامتی به ایران رسیدیم.</p> <p><i>be salaamati be iraan residim.</i></p> <p>We arrived in Iran safely.</p>	<p>پدر به تنهایی به تهران رفت.</p> <p><i>pedar be tanhaayi be tehraan raft.</i></p> <p>Father went to Tehran by himself.</p>
<p>امروز معلم انگلیسی به مدرسه نیامد.</p> <p><i>emrooz mo'Allem-e engilisi be madrese nayaamad.</i></p> <p>Today the English teacher didn't come to school.</p>	<p>او در دانشکده معلم زبان انگلیسی است.</p> <p><i>oo dar daaneshkade mo'Allem-e zabaan-e engilisi ast.</i></p> <p>He is an English teacher at the college.</p>
<p>معلم روی تخته سیاه می نویسد.</p> <p><i>mo'Allem rooye takhte siaah minevisad.</i></p> <p>The teacher writes on the blackboard.</p>	<p>یاد گرفتن یک زبان خارجی دشوار نیست.</p> <p><i>yaad gereftan-e yek zabaan-e khaareji doshvaar nist.</i></p> <p>Learning a foreign language is not difficult.</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

به سلامتی

beh salaamati

"good, cheers, to the good health"

Beh, "to" + **salaamati**, "health," "good health" = به سلامتی , **beh salaamati** ("To the good health"). This expression is useful to express the listener good health or luck in whatever they're planning to do. It can be translated to different words in English such as "well" or "good," depending on the situation and one's personal choice. When toasting you can say, به سلامتی , **beh salamati** means "Cheers."

For example:

1. به سلامتی کی به ایران تشریف آوردید؟
beh salaamati key beh iraan tashrif aavardid?
"Good, when did you come to Iran?"

خودم, تنهایی

khodam , tanhaaei

"by myself"

Khodam, خودم, ("myself") is made of خود **khod** + م, **m** (which represent من, **man**, meaning "I"). تنهایی, **tanhaei** means "by myself" or "alone," and all together, **khodam tanhaei** means "on my own," "by myself," or "alone."

For example:

1. خودم تنهایی به شیراز رفتم.
khodam tanhaaei beh shiraz raftam.
"I went to Shiraz alone."

شما اهل کجا هستید؟

shomaa ahl-e kojaa hastid?

"where are you from?"

This question literally means "where are you domesticated?"

We can also say, اهل کجائی؟ , **ahl-e kojaei?** ("Where are you from?") or کجائی هستی؟ , **kojaei hasti?** ("Where are you from?").

For example:

1. نامزد شما اهل کجا است؟
naamzad-e shomaa ahle kojaa ast?
"Where is your fiance from?"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Honorific Persian

اولین باره (بار است) تشریف آوردید ایران؟

avvalin baare (baar ast) tashrif aavardid iraan?

"Is this the first time you have come to Iran? "

In this lesson, we will learn how to use:

1. Honorific Verbs

2. Honorific Phrases

1. Honorific Verbs

There are a few verbs and phrases in Persian that you can use to show your respect for strangers or people of higher rank, such as teachers, bosses, or an elderly family member or relative. Although there's no official caste system in Iran, using such words express politeness.

Here are some examples:

Plain form in Persian	Romanization	Honorific form in Persian	Romanization	English
گفتند	<i>goftand</i>	فرمودند	<i>farmoodand</i>	"they, he, she said"
آمدند	<i>aamadand</i>	تشریف آوردند	<i>tashrif aavardand</i>	"they, he, she came"
خوردند	<i>khordand</i>	میل فرمودند	<i>meyl farmoodand</i>	"they, he, she ate"
خواستند	<i>khastand</i>	تقاضا فرمودند	<i>taghazaa farmoodand</i>	"they, he, she requested"
رفتند	<i>raftand</i>	تشریف بردند	<i>tashrif bordand</i>	"they, he, she left"
اجازه دادند	<i>ejaaze dadand</i>	اجازه فرمودند	<i>ejaaze farmoodand</i>	"they, he, she permitted"

2. Honorific Phrases

The following phrases will come in handy when you want to speak a perfect honorific Persian:

Honorific form in Persian	Romanization	English	In which situation do you use this?
اجازه بفرمائید با هم برویم.	<i>ejaaze befarmaayid baa ham beravim.</i>	"Let's go together," or literally "Allow me to go together."	When you want to ask someone very politely to go with you somewhere.
شما چه فرمودید؟	<i>shomaa che farmoodid?</i>	"I beg your pardon?"	When you want to ask someone to repeat what they just said.
میهمانان تشریف آوردند.	<i>mihmaanaan tashrif aavardand.</i>	"Guests arrived."	When you are announcing that some expected people arrived.
تمنا می‌کنم.	<i>tamannaa mikonam.</i>	"I beg"	When you are requesting something very politely.
خواهش می‌کنم.	<i>khaahesh mikonam.</i>	"Please" or "You're welcome"	When you request sth or when replying to someone who thanked you
سعادت نداشتیم.	<i>sa'aadat nadaashtim.</i>	"We were not blessed"	Reply to someone asking why you didn't accept their invitation or attend their party.

Honorific forms applied to sentences:

Persian	Romanization	English
رئیس جمهور از سالن تشریف بردند.	<i>ra'is-jomhoor az saalon tashrif bordand.</i>	"The president left the hall."
اعلی حضرت به زودی تشریف فرما میشوند.	<i>a'ala hazrat be zoodi tashrif farmaa mishavand.</i>	"His Majesty will come soon."
دکتر فردا به بیمارستان تشریف می‌آورند.	<i>doktor fardaa be bimaarestaan tashrif miaavarand.</i>	"The doctor will come to the hospital tomorrow. "
کشیش از مردم تقاضای کمک فرمودند.	<i>keshish az mardom taqaazaa-ye komak farmoodand.</i>	"The priest asked people for help."
خواهش می‌کنم تشریف ببرید.	<i>khaahesh mikonam tashrif bebarid.</i>	"Please leave."

Examples from the Dialogue

- به سلامتی چند وقت اینجا می‌مونید (می‌مانید)؟
be salaamati chand vaqt injaa mimoonid (mimaanid).
"Good, how long are you going to stay here?"
- نامزدتون (نامزدتان) اهل تهرانه (تهران است)؟
naamzadeton (naamzadetaan) ahl-e tehraane (tehraan ast)?
"Is your fiance from Tehran?"

Sample Sentences

1. اجازه بفرمائید برای شما آب بیاورم.
ejaaze befarmaayid baraaye shomaa aab biyaavaram.
"Let me bring you water." (polite)
2. شما چه فرمودید؟
shomaa che farmoodid?
"I beg your pardon?" (polite)
3. ملکه انگلستان به ایران تشریف آوردند.
malake-ye engelestaan be iraan tashrif aavardand.
"The Queen of England came to Iran." (polite)

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Tourist destinations in Iran

Iran is an ancient country with over 9,000 years of history. There are many ancient ruins, palaces, cities, tombs, monuments, etc. Iran also has a very rich culture, with world famous poets like Hafez, Sa'adi, and Ferdowsi, scientists like Razi and Avicenna, and many more. Therefore, there are many interesting places to visit in Iran. One of the most famous destinations in Iran is Shiraz. The Tombs of Hafez and Sa'adi are located in Shiraz. Vakil Bazaar, the 1000 years old marketplace, is also located in Shiraz, and just 50 km to the north lies Persepolis, the 2500-year old Achaemenian capital of ancient Iran. From Persepolis, tourists can take a ride to Pasargad, where the tomb of Cyrus the Great is located. Isfahan is another famous tourist destination in Iran. Si-o-seh pol, or "the 33 Bridges," is one of the most interesting sites to visit. This brick bridge is 414 years old, and it is built over Zayandeh rood, ("the river of Zayandeh Rood"). Naghsh-e Jahan Square is one of the largest squares in the world. In Isfahan, the old marketplace, palaces, and mosques are beautiful and breathtaking. The architecture in buildings like the Shah Mosque, also known as Imam Mosque is extraordinary. The north, south, east, and west of Iran has many, many places to visit. Iran is a rich tapestry and a unique place to visit. You can see many distinct cultures in just one country. As you learn the Persian language and get to know the Iranian culture and customs, it would be nice to plan a trip to Iran.

Useful expression

1. مقاصد توریستی در ایران
maghaased-e tooristi dar iraan
"Tourist destinations in Iran"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #4

Which Iranian Shoes Will You Buy?

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#4

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. شیرین هدایت : همیشه اون کفشای (آن کفش‌های) شب آبی رنگ رو (را) امتحان کنم؟
2. جمشید : بله، حتماً چه سائیزی؟
3. شیرین هدایت : سی و شیش (سی و شش).
4. شیرین هدایت : می‌شه لطفاً رنگ مشکی رو (را) هم بیارید (بیاورید)؟
5. جمشید : جیر یا ورنی؟
6. شیرین هدایت : جیر لطفاً!
7. جمشید : کفش راحتیه (راحتی است)!
8. شیرین هدایت : یک کم تنگه (تنگ است).
9. جمشید : یکی دو بار بپوشید جا باز می‌کنه (می‌کند).
10. شیرین هدایت : شیرین هدایت : اگه (اگر) فقط بخوام (بخوام) یک بار بپوشم چی؟

ROMANIZATION

1. Shirin Hedaayat : mishe oon kafshaa-ye (aan kafsh-haa-ye) shab-e aabi rang roo (raa) emtehaan konam?
2. Jamshid : bale, hatman che saayzi?
3. Shirin Hedaayat : si-yo shish (si-yo shesh).
4. Shirin Hedaayat : mishe lotfan rang-e meshki ro (raa) ham biyaarid (biyaavarid)?
5. Jamshid : jir yaa verni?
6. Shirin Hedaayat : jir lotfan.
7. Jamshid : kafsh-e raahati-ye (raahati ast).
8. Shirin Hedaayat : yek kam tange (tang ast).
9. Jamshid : yeki do baar bepooshid jaa baaz mikone (mikonad).
10. Shirin Hedaayat : agar faqat bekhaam (bekhaaham) yek baar bepoosham chi?

ENGLISH

1. Shirin Hedayat : Can I try on those blue evening shoes?
2. Jamshid : Yes, sure. What size?
3. Shirin Hedayat : Thirty-six.
4. Shirin Hedayat : Could you please bring the black ones too?
5. Jamshid : Suede or varnished?
6. Shirin Hedayat : Suede please!
7. Jamshid : These shoes are very comfortable!
8. Shirin Hedayat : They're a bit tight.
9. Jamshid : If you wear them once or twice, they'll stretch out!
10. Shirin Hedayat : What if I want to wear them only once?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
جیر	jir	suede	noun
ورنی	verni	patent leather	noun
پوشیدن	pooshidan	to wear	verb
فقط	faqat	only	adv/adj/conjunction
مشکی	meshki	black	noun
تنگ	tang	tight	adjective
کفش شب	kafsh-e shab	evening shoes	noun
اگر	agar	if	conjunction
لطفاً	lotfan	please	adverb
میشه امتحان کنم؟	mishe emtehaan konam?	Can I try?	sentence

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>کفش جیر راحت تر از کفش چرمی است. <i>kafsh-e jir raahat tar az kafsh-e charmi ast.</i> Suede shoes are more comfortable than leather shoes.</p>	<p>کفش ورنی برای روزهای بارانی بهتر است. <i>kafsh-e verni baraaye rooz-haa-ye baaraani behtar ast.</i> Patent leather shoes are better for rainy days.</p>
---	--

<p>پوشیدن لباس گرم در زمستان لازم است. <i>pooshidan-e lebaas-e garm dar zemestaan laazem ast.</i> Wearing warm clothes in winter is necessary.</p>	<p>فقط من و شبنم در خانه بودیم. <i>faqat man-o shabnam dar khaane boodim.</i> Just me and Shabnam were at home.</p>
<p>من فقط روزهای یکشنبه وقتم آزاد است. <i>man faqat rooz-haa-ye yekshanbe vaqtam azaad ast.</i> I am only free on Sunday.</p>	<p>من کفش مشکی دوست دارم. <i>man kafsh-e meshki doost daaram .</i> I like black shoes.</p>
<p>این دستکش ها برای من تنگ است. <i>in dastkesh-haa baraaye man tang ast.</i> These gloves are tight for me.</p>	<p>این کفش شب را دیروز خریدم. <i>in kafsh-e shab raa dirooz kharidam.</i> I bought these evening shoes yesterday.</p>
<p>اگر دوست داشتی بیا. <i>agar doost daashti biyaa.</i> If you like, come.</p>	<p>اگر مرا ندیدی، خداحافظ! <i>agar maraa nadidi, khodaahaafez!</i> In case you didn't see me, goodbye!</p>
<p>لطفاً مرا کمک کنید. <i>lotfan maraa komak konid.</i> "Please help me."</p>	<p>می‌توانید لطفاً میز را کنار بزنید؟ <i>mitavaanid lotfan miz raa kenaar bezanid?</i> Could you please put the table aside?</p>

می‌شه (می‌شود) این کفش رو (کفش را) امتحان کنم؟

mishe (mishavad) in kafsh ro (kafsh raa) emtehaan konam?

Can I try these shoes on?

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

(میشه) میشود

Misheh (mishavad)

"is it possible?", "it is possible"

misheh (colloquial) or **mishavad** (written form) means "is it possible?" or "Can I...?" It is a polite way of requesting or asking to do something.

You can use this phrase when requesting something, or when you want something and you need to ask for permission. When you ask for a permission using this word, it is considered polite and respectful, so please learn this word and use it often.

For example:

1. میشه امروز به خانه ما بیای؟

misheh emrooz beh khaaney maa biyaa?

"Can you come to our house today?" (lit. "Is it possible to come to our house today?")

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Expressing Ability: Can and Could

می‌شه اون کفشای (آن کفش‌های) شب آبی رنگ رو (را) امتحان کنم؟
mishe oon kafs-haa-ye (aan kafsh-haa-ye) shab-e aabi rang roo (raa) emtehaan konam?
"Can I try on those blue evening shoes? "

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. use "Can" and "Could" in Persian
-

1. "Can" and "Could" in Persian

There are two ways to express ability in Persian:

- with the verb می‌شه (*mishe*)
- with the verb توانستن (*tavaanestan*)

To make question sentences using a simpler word than توانستن (*tavaanestan*), "to be able to," we can use the verb می‌شه (*mishe*) "is it possible," for any question.

Example:

1. می‌شه (می‌شود) منم (من هم) بیام؟
mishe (mishavad) manam (man ham) biyaam?
"Can I come too?"
2. می‌شه (می‌شود) اونم (اوهم) بیاد؟
mishe (mishavad) oonam (oon ham) biyaad?
"Can he/she come too?"
3. می‌شه (می‌شود) اونام (آنها هم) بیان (بیایند)؟
mishe (mishavad) oonaam (aanhaa ham) biyaan (biyaayand)?
"Can they come too?"

The basic structure is:

mishe (mishavad) + subject + ham + main verb

"Can" or "could" in Persian is made from infinitive verb توانستن (*tavaanestan*), "to be able to."

But if we want to use توانستن (*tavanestan*), ("to be able to"), we must learn the conjugation chart below. The formula is as follow: from the infinitive verb, we extract the core verb **tavan**, then we add the prefix, **mi + tavan**, ("power") + respective suffix of م (**am**), for first person singular, ی (**i**) for second person singular, and د (**ad**), for third person singular. For first person plural, we add یم (**im**), ید (**id**) for second person plural, and ند (**and**) for third person plural. Please take a look at conjugation chart and sample sentences below.

Persian	Romanization	English
می‌توانم	<i>mitavaanam</i>	"I can"
می‌توانی	<i>mitavaani</i>	"You can" (Singular)
می‌تواند	<i>mitavaanad</i>	"He/She can"
می‌توانیم	<i>mitavaanim</i>	"We can"
می‌توانید	<i>mitavaanid</i>	"You can" (Plural)
می‌توانند	<i>mitavaanand</i>	"They can"

Note: Each of the verbs in the above chart are considered a sentence, as they include: verb + personal ending (Subject)

Sentence pattern

Subject + a conjugation form of توانستن (*tavaanestan*), "ability" + object + main verb.

Note: We can omit the subject as the verb's personal ending shows who is the subject.

Examples from the Dialogue

- می‌شه لطفاً رنگ مشکی رو (را) هم بیارین (بیاورید)؟
mishe lotfan rang-e meshki ro (raa) ham biyaarin (biyaavarid)?
 "Could you please bring the black ones too?"

Sample Sentences

- او می‌تواند یک ماشین بخرد.
oo mitavaanad yek maashin bekharad.
 "He (or she) can buy a car."
- آنها می‌توانند به سفر بروند.
aanhaa mitavaanand be safar beravand.
 "They can travel."
- ما می‌توانیم شاد باشیم.
maa mitavaanim shaad baashim.
 "We can be happy."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Buying shoes and bags in Tehran

The Iranian population is very young. The average age is 28, and young Iranian boys and girls love to wear stylish clothes. There are many national and international brands for shoes and bags in Iranian cities. In Iran, we have a special kind of market named after the French word *passage*. It is kind of a mini mall but in these mini malls or *passages*, there are stores which sell clothes, shoes, bags, perfumes, watches, etc. for men and women. Of course, most *passages* have at least one coffee shop, which provides sweets and tea and coffee for buyers and store owners.

Tehran is the capital and also the epicenter of trades in Iran. For shoes and bags, there are large *passages* in Tehran. Some stores sell national brands, while others sell international brands. Of course, national brands are cheaper. International brands, in particular French and Italian brands, are the most popular among young men and women. Valiasr St., Mirdamad Ave, and the street of Bagh-e Sepah Salar are well-known for shoe, bag, and clothing shops which offer many French and Italian brands. Bazar-e Bozorg-e Tehran ("The Great Market of Tehran") and va Chahar Rah-e Estantbol ("Istanbul Crossing") are other places to buy shoes and bags but they mostly offer national brands.

Useful expression

1. بازار کیف و کفش در تهران
baazaar-e kif-o kafsh dar tehraan
"Tehran's bag and shoes market"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #5

Dress for the Weather in Iran!

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#5

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. جمشید : داری میری (میروی) بیرون باران جان؟
2. باران : بله دای جون (جان).
3. جمشید : داره (دارد) بارون (باران) میاد (می‌آید).
4. باران : پس میرم (میروم) بالا کفشم رو عوض کنم.
5. جمشید : بهتره (بهتر است) یه (یک) بارونی (بارانی) هم برداری.
6. باران : دای جون (جان) وقت ندارم.
7. باران : وقت ندارم کفش و بارونی (بارانی) رو (را) با بقیه لباسام (لباس‌هایم) جور کنم.
8. جمشید : عزیزم نباید اینقدر سخت بگیری.
9. باران : آگه (اگر) من سخت نگیرم بقیه به من سخت می‌گیرن (می‌گیرند).

ROMANIZATION

1. Jamshid : daari miri (miravi) biroon Baran jaan.
2. Baran : bale daayi joon (jaan).
3. Jamshid : daare (daarad) baaroon (baaraan) miyaad (mi aayad).
4. Baran : pas miram (miravam) baalaa kafsham ro avaz konam.
5. Jamshid : behtare (behtar ast) ye (yek) baarooni (baaraani) ham bardaari.
6. Baran : daayi joon (jaan) vaqt nadaaram.
7. Baran : vaqt nadaaram kafsh va baarooni (baaraani) ro (raa) baa baqiyeye lebaasaam (lebaas-haam) joor konam.
8. Jamshid : azizam nabaayad enqadr sakht begiri.
9. Baran : age (agar) man sakht nagiram baqiye be man sakht migirand.

ENGLISH

1. Jamshid : Are you going out, dear Baran?
2. Baran : Yes, dear uncle!
3. Jamshid : It's raining!
4. Baran : Then I'll go upstairs and change my shoes!
5. Jamshid : You'd better take a raincoat too!
6. Baran : Dear uncle, I don't have the time!
7. Baran : I don't have time to match the raincoat and shoes with my other outfits!
8. Jamshid : Dear, don't take it so hard!
9. Baran : If I don't take it hard, others will be hard on me.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
باران	baaraan	rain	noun
کت بارانی	kot-e baaraani	raincoat	noun
لباس	lebaas	outfit, dress, clothes	noun
ست کردن, جور کردن	joor kardan, set kardan	to match	verb
وقت, زمان	vaqt, zamaan	time	noun
داشتن	daashtan	to have	verb
بیرون	biroon	outside, out	noun
سخت گرفتن	sakht gereftan	to take it hard	verb
عوض کردن	avaz kardan	to change	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>باران در حال بارش</p> <p><i>baaraan dar haal-e baareh</i></p> <p>falling rain</p>	<p>باران در خیابان می بارد.</p> <p><i>baaraan dar khiabaan mibaarad.</i></p> <p>The rain is falling on the street.</p>
<p>بارش باران</p> <p><i>baareh-e baaraan</i></p> <p>falling rain</p>	<p>دیروز باران زیادی در یک مدت زمان کوتاه آمد.</p> <p><i>dirooz baaraan-e ziaadi dar yek mod-dat zamaan-e kootaah aamad.</i></p> <p>Yesterday, we had a lot of rain in a short period of time.</p>

<p>دیروز باران زیادی در یک زمان کوتاه آمد.</p> <p><i>dirooz baaraan-e ziaadi dar yek zamaan-e kootaah aamad.</i></p> <p>Yesterday, we had a lot of rain in a short period of time.</p>	<p>کت بارانی من مشکی است.</p> <p><i>kot-e baaraani-e man meshki ast.</i></p> <p>My raincoat is black .</p>
<p>لباسهای خود را خوب نگه دارید.</p> <p><i>lebaas haay khod raa khoob nagah daarid.</i></p> <p>Take good care of your clothes.</p>	<p>صبر کن کفش و دامنمو (دامنم را) ست کنم.</p> <p><i>sabr kon kafsh-o (va) daamanam-o (daamanam raa) set konam.</i></p> <p>Wait for me to match my shoes and skirt.</p>
<p>امروز اصلاً وقت ندارم.</p> <p><i>emrooz aslan vaqt nadaaram.</i></p> <p>I do not have any time today.</p>	<p>دیشب میهمان داشتم.</p> <p><i>dishab mihmaan daashtam.</i></p> <p>Last night I had a guest.</p>
<p>من دو برادر و یک خواهر دارم.</p> <p><i>man do baraadar va yek khaahar daaram.</i></p> <p>I have two brothers and one sister.</p>	<p>دیشب مهمان داشتم.</p> <p><i>dishab mehmaan daashtam.</i></p> <p>Last night I had a guest.</p>
<p>بیرون هوا خیلی سرد است.</p> <p><i>biroon havaa kheyli sard ast.</i></p> <p>It is very cold outside.</p>	<p>زندگی را سخت نگیر.</p> <p><i>zendegi raa sakht nagir.</i></p> <p>Take it easy in life. (Lit. Don't take life hard.)</p>
<p>برای عوض کردن کفش به بازار رفتم.</p> <p><i>baraay-e avaz kardan-e kafsh be baazaar raftam.</i></p> <p>I went to the market to change shoes.</p>	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

وقت ندارم

vaght nadaaram

"I don't have time"

vaght, وقت, (***vaght nadaaram***, "I do not have time") is used just the same as in English. ***vaght***, means "time," and ***nadaaram***, ندارم, means "I don't have."

We use it when we want to say we do not have time to do something.

You can use this phrase with objects other than "time." For example, "I don't have money," "I don't have a mobile phone," etc.

vaght, ("time") + ندارم, ***nadaaram***, ("I do not have") = ***vaqt nadaaram***, ("I do not have time.")

For example:

1. وقت ندارم یک فیلم تماشا کنم.

vaqt nadaaram yek film tamaashaa konam.

"I don't have time to watch a movie. "

باران *baaraan* "Rain"

Baran is a girl's name in Iran. It's not appropriate to change the **aa** sound to **oo** for names. But when you're referring to rain as the form of precipitation, it's ok to do so. And actually, you'd sound native. In spoken Persian, *baaraan* becomes *baaroon*. However, if you say *baaraan*, there is no problem at all.

For example:

1. باران برای زندگی لازم است.
baaraan baraay-e zendegi laazem ast.
"Rain is necessary for life."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Giving Advice

بِهْتَرِه (بِهْتَرِ اسْت) یِه (یَک) بَارُونِی (بَارَانِی) هَم بَرْدَارِی
behtare (behtar ast) ye (yek) baarooni (baaraani) ham bardaari.
"You'd better take a raincoat too!"

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. Use the phrase **بِهْتَرِه**, *behtare*, meaning "it would be better"
 2. Other ways to give advice
-

1. The phrase **بِهْتَرِه**, *behtare*, meaning "it would be better"

behtare, **بِهْتَرِه**, meaning "it would be better," is a Persian phrase used as a warning or suggestion.

For example:

1. **بِهْتَرِه** این کار را نکنی.
behtare in kaar raa nakoni.

"You'd better not to do this."

2. بهتره این کار را نکنی.
behtare in kaar raa bekoni.
"You'd better do this."

Sentence Pattern

behtare, بهتره, meaning "it would be better," comes at the beginning of the sentence, followed by the advice. Then, the sentence ends with the verb.

Note: On some occasions, the advice comes first and the sentence ends with بهتره, **behtare**.

For example:

1. اینطوری بهتره.
intori behtare.
"It's better this way."

Let's see some more examples:

Persian	Romanization	English
بهتره از این راه برویم.	<i>behtare az in raah beravim.</i>	"We'd better go this way."
بهتره باز هم فکر کنی.	<i>behtare baaz ham fekr koni.</i>	"You'd better think again."
بهتره قبل از غذا یک لیوان آب بخوری.	<i>behtare qabl az ghazaa yek livaan aab bekhori.</i>	"You'd better drink a glass of water before meals."

2. Other ways to give advice

We can use other phrases to give advice, such as به نظر من **be nazare man**, meaning "in my opinion" or "I think," and اگر از من می‌پرسی **agar az man miporsi**, meaning "if you ask me." Please look at the chart below:

Phrase	Sample sentence	Romanization	English
به نظر من <i>be nazare man</i> "in my opinion"/ "I think"	به نظر من شما امروز به خانه برگردید.	<i>be nazar-e man shomaa emrooz be khaane bargardid.</i>	"In my opinion, you should go back home today."
اگر از من می پرسید <i>agar az man miporsi</i> "If you ask me"	اگر از من می پرسید فردا به مدرسه برو.	<i>agar az man miporsi fardaa be madrese naro.</i>	"If you ask me, do not go to school tomorrow."
من فکر می کنم <i>man fekr nemikonam</i> "I think"	من فکر می کنم شما. باید ماشین بخرید	<i>man fekr mikonam shomaa baayad maashin bekharid.</i>	"I think you should buy a car."

Examples from the Dialogue

- عزیزم نباید اینقدر سخت بگیری.
azizam nabaayad inqadr sakht begiri.
"Dear, don't take it so hard!"

Sample Sentences

- بهتره از این راه برویم.
behtare az in raah beravim.
"We'd better go this way."
- بهتره باز هم فکر کنی.
behtare baaz ham fekr koni.
"You'd better think again."
- بهتره قبل از غذا یک لیوان آب بخوری.
behtare qabl az ghazaa yek livaan aab bekhori.
"You'd better drink a glass of water before meals."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Addressing family members and close friends.

In Persian, we put خانم *khaanom* ("Ms.," "Miss," "Mrs.") and آقا *aaqaa* ("Mr.") before people's name to address them politely. For people you feel intimate with, you use جان *jaan* ("dear," "darling," "sweetie," or "honey") or جون *joon*. The latter is a bit more informal, but it still means "dear," "darling," "sweetie," or "honey." جان *jaan* also means "life." جانم *jaanam* ("my life") is a word you can use instead of بله *bale* ("yes") when you're answering the phone or in person.

Useful expression

- آداب معاشرت
aadaab-e mo'aasherat
"Etiquette in greeting "

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #6

Talking About Your Plans in Persian

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Persian
 - Main
 - Romanization
 - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#6

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. فرهاد : راستی جمعه با خواهرزاده‌هام (خواهرزاده‌هایم) می‌ریم (می‌رویم) کوه. میای (می‌آیی)؟
2. هدی : دوست دارم بیام (بیایم) ولی خیلی وقته (وقت است) ورزش نکردم.
3. فرهاد : ما هم کوهنوردی نمی‌کنیم. با تله کابین می‌ریم (می‌رویم) و برمی‌گردیم.
4. هدی : پس صبح زودم (زود هم) نمی‌بین (نمی‌روید).
5. فرهاد : ۹ صبح زوده (زود است)؟
6. هدی : من جمعه‌ها تا ۲ می‌خوابم.
7. فرهاد : اوکی، راستی یادم رفت بگم (بگویم) جمشید هم میاد (می‌آید).
8. هدی : اینو (این را) باید اول می‌گفتی.
9. فرهاد : ولی تله کابین این جمعه در دست تعمیره (تعمیر است).

ROMANIZATION

1. Farhad : raasti jom'e baa khaaharzaade-haam (khaaharzaade-haa-yam) mirim (miravim) kooh, miyaai (miaayi)?
2. Hodaa : doost daaram biyaam (biyaayam) vali kheyli vaqte (vaqt ast) varzesh nakardam.
3. Farhad : maa ham kooonavardi nemikonim. baa telekaabin mirim-o (miravim va) barmigardim.
4. Hodaa : pas sobhe zoodam (zood ham) nemirin (nemiravid).
5. Farhad : noh-e sobh zoode (zood ast)?
6. Hodaa : man jom'e-haa taa do mikhaabam.
7. Farhad : okey, raasti yaadam raft begam (begooyam) jamshid ham miyaad (miaayad).
8. Hodaa : in-o (in raa) baayad az avval migofti.
9. Farhad : vali telekaabin in jom'e dar dast-e ta'mire (ta'mir ast).

ENGLISH

1. Farhad : By the way, we're going climbing with my nieces and nephews on Friday. Will you join?
2. Hoda : I'd like to come, but I haven't worked out in a while.
3. Farhad : We won't be hiking! We'll take the gondola lift up and down.
4. Hoda : Then, you're not going early in the morning either?
5. Farhad : Would 9 be early?
6. Hoda : Fridays, I sleep in until 2.
7. Farhad : Ok, oh I forgot to tell you that Jamshid is coming along too.
8. Hoda : You should've said this first.
9. Farhad : But the gondola lift is under repair this Friday.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
ورزش کردن	varzesh kardan	to work out	verb
خیلی وقت	kheyli vaqt	in a while, long time, for a long time	noun phrase, adjective+noun
راستی	raasti	by the way, oh	exclamation
در دست تعمیر	dar dast-e ta'mir	under repair	noun phrase
تله کابین	telekaabin	gondola lift	noun
جمعه	jom'e	Friday	noun
خواهرزاده, برادر زاده	khaaharzaade, baraadarzaade	nephew, niece	noun
چون, چونکه, زیرا	chon, chonke, ziraa	because	conjunction
کوهنوردی کردن	koohnavardi kardan	mountain climbing	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>ورزش کردن برای یک زندگی سالم لازم است. <i>varzesh kardan baraaye yek zendegi-ye saalem laazam ast.</i> Working out is necessary for a healthy life.</p>	<p>خیلی وقته به ایران نرفتم. <i>kheyli vaqte be iraan naraftam.</i> I haven't gone to Iran for along time.</p>
<p>راستی دیروز به دانشگاه نرفتم. <i>raasti dirooz be daaneshgaah naraftam.</i> By the way, I didn't go to university yesterday.</p>	<p>خط تلفن در دست تعمیر است. <i>khatt-e telefon dar dast-e ta'mir ast.</i> The telephone line is under repair.</p>

<p>با تله کابین تا ایستگاه هفتم بالا رفتیم.</p> <p><i>baa telekaabin taa 'istgaah-e haftom baalaa raftim.</i></p> <p>We went up to the seventh station on the gondola lift.</p>	<p>روز جمعه خود را چگونه گذراندید؟</p> <p><i>rooz-e jom'e-ye khod raa chegoone gozaraandid?</i></p> <p>How did you spend your Friday?</p>
<p>من خواهرزاده یا برادرزاده ندارم.</p> <p><i>man khaaharzaade yaa baradarzaade nadaaram.</i></p> <p>I do not have a niece or nephew.</p>	<p>چونکه او هویج دوست ندارد.</p> <p><i>chonke oo havij doost nadaarad.</i></p> <p>Because he doesn't like carrots.</p>
<p>کوهنوردی کردن برای من زیاد سخت نیست.</p> <p><i>koohnavardi kardan baraaye man ziyaad sakht nist.</i></p> <p>Mountain climbing isn't very hard for me.</p>	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

(در دست تعمیر) تعمیر است

dar dast-e tamireh (tamir ast)

"It is under repair", "It is under maintenance."

Dar daste tamireh ("under maintenance," "under repair," or "in process of repairing"), در دست تعمیره, *dar* ("in") + دست *dast* ("hand") + تعمیر *tamir*, ("repair") + است *ast*, ("is") = در دست تعمیر است *dar dast-e tamir ast*, literally "in the hand of repair." All together, this means "it is under repair."

We use this phrase when we want to say something is under maintenance. There are no restrictions on using this sentence, so it can be used in any occasion when a repair is in process.

For example:

1. ماشین من در دست تعمیر است.

mashin-e man dar dast-e tamir ast.

"My car is under repair."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Negating Verbs

دوست دارم بیام (بیایم) ولی خیلی وقته (وقت است) ورزش نکردم.

doost daaram biyaam (biyaayam) vali kheyli vaqte (vaqt ast) varzesh nakardam.

"I'd like to come, but I haven't worked out in a while."

In this lesson, we will learn:

1. Negating a verb

2. Verb "to be" in Persian, negating it in the past form

1. Negating a verb

Negating a verb in Persian is very easy. You just add the prefix *ne* or *na* or *naa* to it. The tense of the verbs defines our choice of either *ne* or *na*.

*There are no specific rules; it is by practice and more experience that we will learn which one to use. In most of cases, it is a dialect issue.

Tense	Persian (affirmative)	Romanization	English	Persian (negative)	Romanization	English
Present continuous	ورزش می کنم	<i>varzesh mikonam</i>	"I do exercise"	ورزش نمی کنم	<i>varzesh nemikonam</i>	"I don't exercise"
Future continuous	میرم	<i>miram</i>	"I will go"	نمیرم	<i>nemiram</i>	"I won't go"
N/A	باید	<i>baayad</i>	"must"	نباید	<i>nabaayad</i>	"must not"
past	کردم	<i>kardam</i>	"I did"	نکردم	<i>nakardam</i>	"I didn't"

Note 1: for ن, **ne** and ن, **na**, there are no rules. It is based on dialect of the place in Iran; some use **ne** and some **na**. Sometimes both forms are used in the same place. It really depends on the person who is speaking. نا, **naa** is used to negate an adjective. For example, راحت, *raahat*, ("comfortable") in negative form is ناراحت, *naaraahat*, ("uncomfortable" or "upset").

Note 2: Present continuous and future continuous are the same in Persian. The context of the sentence determines which one it is.

Chart

Let's see some more examples of future continuous, present continuous, and past tenses:

Persian (affirmative)	Romanization	Persian (negative)	Romanization	English
می کنم	<i>mikonam</i>	نمی کنم	<i>nemikonam</i>	I will do, I will not do
می خورم	<i>mikhoram</i>	نمی خورم	<i>nemikhoram</i>	I will eat, I will not eat
می دووم	<i>midavam</i>	نمی دووم	<i>nemidavam</i>	I will run, I will not run
می برم	<i>mibaram</i>	نمی برم	<i>nemibaram</i>	I will take, I will not take.
زدم	<i>zadam</i>	نزددم	<i>nazadam</i>	I did hit, I did not hit
دیدم	<i>didam</i>	ندیدم	<i>nadidam</i>	I did see, I did not see

Examples:

- من آنها را ندیدم.
man aanhaa raa nadidam.

"I did not see them."

2. شما امروز به دانشگاه نرفتید.
shomaa emrooz be daaneshgaah naraftid.
"You did not go to university today."

3. ما دیروز کار نکردیم.
maa dirooz kaar nakardim.
"We didn't work yesterday."

2. Verb "to be" in Persian negating it in the past form

boodan, بودن, ("to be"). In Persian there are no regular or irregular verbs. All verbs are considered to be regular.

Sentence Pattern for an affirmative statement:

Subject + object (mostly a place or an intangible reality) + a conjugated form of بودن, **boodan** ("to be")

Examples:

1. من در کلاس بودم.
man dar kelaas boodam.
"I was in class."

2. او در یک رویا بود.
oo dar khaab boodam.
"He was in a dream."

Now let's see the conjugation chart of the all negated forms of **boodan** in the past tense

Persian	Romanization	English
نبودم	<i>naboodam</i>	I was not
نبودی	<i>naboodi</i>	You were not
نبود	<i>nabood</i>	He (she) was not
نبودیم	<i>naboodim</i>	We were not
نبودید	<i>naboodid</i>	You were not
نبودند	<i>naboodand</i>	They were not

Examples:

1. دیروز خوشحال نبودم.
dirooz khosh haal naboodam.
"I was not happy yesterday."

2. شما در میهمانی نبودید.
shomaa dar mihmaani naboodid.
"You were not at the party."

3. آنها در خانه نبودند.
aanhaa dar khaane naboodand.
"They were not at home."

Examples from the Dialogue

1. ما هم کوهنوردی نمی‌کنیم. با تله کابین می‌ریم (می‌رویم) و برمی‌گردیم.
maa ham kooonavardi nemikonim. baa telekaabin mirim-o (miravim va) barmigardim.
"We won't be hiking! We'll take the gondola lift up and down."

Sample Sentences

1. من آنها را ندیدم.
man aanhaa raa nadidam.
"I did not see them."
2. ما دیروز کار نکردیم.
maa dirooz kaar nakardim.
"We didn't work yesterday."
3. شما امروز به دانشگاه نرفتید.
shomaa emrooz be daaneshgaah naraftid.
"You didn't go to university today."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Weekends in Iran

Weekend days in Iran are Thursdays and Fridays. Some people will go out of the city and spend time in the countryside; others go to watch a movie or shopping. Young boys and girls may date on weekends or spend times with friends.

It really depends on which part of Iran they live in and what activities interest them. For example, in Tehran there is a very famous ski resort for those who like ski, while in the southwestern city of Abadan, people may go fishing in the Arvand river or go to the nearby city of Khoramshahr to eat one of the best chicken kebab in restaurants close to famous bridge of Khoramshahr.

The beautiful southern city of Shiraz is a very special place. There are lots of things to do in Shiraz. Just a 2-hour drive to the west will take you to Yasooj city, where a nice ski resort is located, and about a 40-minute drive to the north will take you to the Persepolis ruins. 30 minutes more and you'll arrive in Pasargad, where Cyrus the Great's tomb is located. 4 hours drive to the south will take you to the Persian Gulf, where you can enjoy the beach and warm weather. And just an hour long drive to the east will take you to *daryacheh-ye namak* ("salt lake") of Shiraz. In Shiraz, people go to visit the mausoleum of Hafez or Sadi, two of the greatest poets of Iran. Bazar vakil of Shiraz and its famous tea house is also another beautiful place to visit on weekends.

Useful expression

1. تعطیلات آخر هفته.
ta'tilaat-e aakhar-e hafte
"weekend holidays"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #7

Don't Be Late in Iran!

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#7

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. فرهاد : شما تا حالا در این سالن کنفرانس بوده‌اید؟
2. شیرین هدایت : این کنفرانس هر سال تو (در) همین سالن سالنه (سالن است).
3. فرهاد : من نمی‌دونم (نمی‌دانم) چطور به اونجا (آنجا) برسم.
4. شیرین هدایت : می‌خوای (می‌خواهی) از دانشگاه به اونجا (آنجا) بری (بروی)؟
5. فرهاد : به احتمال زیاد.
6. شیرین هدایت : اتوبوس راحت‌ترین ولی طولانی‌ترین (طولانی‌ترین است).
7. فرهاد : اتوبوسا (اتوبوس‌ها) معمولاً سر وقت نیستن (نیستند). من ریسک نمی‌کنم.
8. شیرین هدایت : می‌تونی (می‌توانی) با تاکسی بری (بروی).
9. فرهاد : ولی به ترافیک بستگی داره (دارد).
10. شیرین هدایت : من همیشه با مترو می‌رم (می‌روم). ولی خوب، معمولاً یک ساعت زودتر راه می‌افتم.

ROMANIZATION

1. Farhaad : shomaa taa haalaa dar in saalon-e konfereans boode'id?
2. Shirin Hedaayat : in konfereans har saal too (dar) hamin saalone (saalon ast).
3. Farhaad : man nemidoonam (nemidaanam) chetor be oonjaa (aanjaa) beresam.
4. Shirin Hedaayat : mikhaay (mikhaahi) az daaneshgaah be oonjaa (aanjaa) beri (beravi).
5. Farhaad : be ehtemaal-e ziyaad.
6. Shirin Hedaayat : ootooboos raahat tarin vali toolaani tarine (toolaani-tarin ast).
7. Farhaad : ootooboosaa (ootooboos-haa) ma'moolan sar-e vaqt nistan (nistand). man risk nemikonam.
8. Shirin Hedaayat : mitooni (mitavaani) baa taaksi beri (beravi).
9. Farhaad : vali be teraafik bastegi daare (daarad).
10. Shirin Hedaayat : man hamishe baa metro miram (miravam). vali khob, ma'moolan yek saa'at zoodtar raah miyoftam.

ENGLISH

1. Farhad : Have you ever been to this conference hall?
2. Shirin Hedayat : This conference is in this same hall every year.
3. Farhad : I don't know how to get there.
4. Shirin Hedayat : Do you want to go there from the university?
5. Farhad : Most likely.
6. Shirin Hedayat : The bus is the easiest, though the longest.
7. Farhad : Buses aren't usually on time. I won't risk it.
8. Shirin Hedayat : You can take a taxi.
9. Farhad : But it depends on the traffic though.
10. Shirin Hedayat : I always take the subway. But, I usually set out one hour earlier.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
سالن	saalon	hall	noun
رسیدن	residan	to get, to reach	verb
سریع	sari'	fast	adjective, adverb
به احتمال زیاد	be ehtemaal-e ziyaad	most likely	adverb
سر وقت	sar-e vaqt	on time	adjective
طولانی	toolaani	long	adjective
کنفرانس	konferaans	conference	noun
مترو	metro	subway	noun
بستگی داشتن	bastegi daashtan	to depend on	verb
زود	zood	early	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>هزینه اجاره سالن چقدر است؟</p> <p><i>hazine-ye ejaare-ye saalon che ghadr ast.</i></p> <p>How much does it cost to rent the hall?</p>	<p>برای رسیدن به بهترین مقام در شرکت باید سخت کار کنم.</p> <p><i>baraaye residan be behtarin maqaam dar sherkat baayad sakht kaar konam.</i></p> <p>To achieve the best position in the company, I have to work hard.</p>
--	---

<p>اوساین بولت سریعترین مرد در جهان است. <i>ousain bolt sari'tarin mard dar jahaan ast.</i> Usain Bolt is the fastest man in the world.</p>	<p>به احتمال زیاد امروز برف می بارد. <i>be ehtemaal-e ziyaad emrooz barf mibaarad.</i> Most likely, today it will snow.</p>
<p>سر وقت حاضر شدن در کلاس بهتر از هر چیزی است. <i>sare vaqt haazer shodan dar kelaas behtar az az har chizi-st.</i> To show up to class on time is better than anything.</p>	<p>امیدوارم زیاد طولانی نشود. <i>omidvaaram ziaad toolaani nashavad.</i> I hope it doesn't take too long.</p>
<p>این کنفرانس بهتر از کنفرانس قبلی بود. <i>in konferaans behtar az konferaans-e qabli bood.</i> This conference was better than the previous conferences.</p>	<p>می توانید به من بگویید نزدیک ترین ایستگاه مترو کجاست؟ <i>mitavaanid be man begooiid nazdiktarin istgaaah-e metro kojaast?</i> Could you tell me where the nearest metro station is?</p>
<p>من یک کارت مترو خریدم. <i>man yek kaart-e metro kharidam.</i> I bought a metro card.</p>	<p>امروزه افراد زیادی در تهران برای رفتن به محل کار خود از مترو استفاده می کنند. <i>emrooze afraad-e ziaadi dar tehraan baraaye raftan be mahall-e kaar-e khod az metro estefaade mikonand.</i> Nowadays many people in Tehran are using the subway to travel to their workplace.</p>
<p>پیروزی در فوتبال به بهترین دفاع بستگی دارد. <i>piroozi dar footbaal beh behtarin defaa bastegi daarad.</i> Victory in football depends on the best defense.</p>	<p>فردا صبح زود یک پرواز دارم. <i>fardaa sobh-e zood yek parvaaz daaram.</i> I have a flight early tomorrow morning.</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

مترو **metro** **"subway"**

There are some loanwords from French in Persian. *مرسی*, **merci**, meaning "thanks," is the most common one. The other one is *مترو*, **metro**.

Whenever we want to mention subways, we use this word **metro**.

The Persian translation for subway is : *قطار زیرزمینی*, **ghatar-e zir zamini** ("underground train," "subway"), but in Iran people use the word *مترو*, **metro** for "subway," both in written and spoken Persian.

For example

1. *متروی تهران هفت خط دارد.*
metroy-e Tehraan haft khat daarad.
 "Tehran's subway has seven lines."

سر وقت
sar-e vaght
"on time"

sar, "head" or "on" + *vaght*, "time" = سر وقت, *sar-e vaght*, "on time."

Just like in English, we use this phrase whenever we need to mention punctuality. In Persian, this phrase comes at the beginning of the sentence. Example: من سر وقت به محل کارم رسیدم, *man sar-e vaght beh mahal-e karam residam*, ("I arrived at work on time"). دیر رسیدن *dir residan* => دیر, *dir*, ("late") + رسیدن, *residan*, ("to get to," "to achieve") = "to get somewhere late."

For example

1. من سر وقت به محل کارم رسیدم.
man sar-e vaght beh mahal-e karam residam.
"I arrived at work on time."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Adjectives; Comparative and Superlative

(اتوبوس راحت‌ترین ولی طولانی‌ترین (طولانی‌ترین است)
ootooboos raahat tarin vali toolaani tarine (toolaani-tarin ast).
"The bus is the easiest, though the longest."

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. Use comparatives and superlatives
 2. Use the adjective "good" in Persian
 3. The difference between written and spoken forms
-

1. Comparatives and Superlatives

To create the comparative in Persian, you just need to add suffix *تر*, *tar* after the adjective. For example: *zibaatar*, "more beautiful."

When we compare two nouns, we first write one noun, then *az*, meaning "from," then the other noun, followed by the comparative form of the adjective. The verb comes last.

Example:

1. برادرم از پدرم قویتر است.
baraadaram az pedaram qavitar ast.
 "My brother is stronger than my father."

For superlative adjectives in Persian, you just need to add suffix ترین, **tarin**, after the adjective.

For example:

1. زیباترین
zibaatarin
 ("the most beautiful")

Comparative and superlative adjectives must invariably be followed by a noun. (Please look at sentence examples.)

In most of times, به, **beh** ("good") is not used as a single adjective. But we use its comparative and superlative forms a lot. بهتر, **behtar** ("better") and بهترین, **behtarin** ("best"). Don't you think **behtar** and better sound similar? It's a fun linguistic resemblance, isn't it?

Let's see the comparative forms of some of the most common adjectives:

Persian	Romanization	English
بهتر	<i>behtar</i>	better
بالتر	<i>baalaatar</i>	higher
زیباتر	<i>zibaatar</i>	prettier
کوتاه تر	<i>kootaahatar</i>	shorter
زشت تر	<i>zeshttar</i>	uglier
قوی تر	<i>qavitar</i>	stronger
مهربان تر	<i>mehrabaantar</i>	kinder
تیره تر	<i>tiretar</i>	darker

Let's see the superlative forms of some of the most common adjectives:

Persian	Romanization	English
بهترین	<i>behtarin</i>	the best
بالترین	<i>baalaatarin</i>	the highest
زیباترین	<i>zibaatarin</i>	the prettiest
کوتاه ترین	<i>kootaahatarin</i>	the shortest
زشت ترین	<i>zeshttarin</i>	the ugliest
قوی ترین	<i>qavitarin</i>	the strongest
مهربان ترین	<i>mehrabaantarin</i>	the kindest
تیره ترین	<i>tiretarin</i>	the darkest

Sample sentences

Persian	Romanization	English
لباس من از لباس او زیباتر است.	lebaas-e man az lebaas-e oo zibaatar ast.	My dress is prettier than her dress.
برادرم از پدرم قویتر است.	baraadaram az pedaram qavitar ast.	My brother is stronger than my father.
اورست بلندترین قله جهان است.	everest bolandtarin qholle-ye jahaan ast.	Mount Everest is the highest peak in the world.
کارون پر آب ترین رودخانه ایران است.	kaaroon por-aab-tarin roodkhaane-ye iraan ast.	Karoon is the most affluent river in Iran.

2. The adjective "good" in Persian

beh, به, "good," is the old word for good. In modern Persian, we do not use **beh** as a single adjective; it is always the comparative بهتر, **behtar**, "better," or the superlative بهترین, **behtarin**, "the best." To say "good," we use the word خوب, **khoob**.

Chart

Conjugated forms of "good/fine" in Persian

Persian	Romanization	English
خویم.	<i>khoobam</i> .	I'm good/fine.
خوبی.	<i>koobi</i> .	You're good/fine.
خوب است.	<i>Khoob ast</i> .	He (She) is good/fine.
خویم.	<i>khoobim</i> .	We are good/fine.
خوید.	<i>khoobid</i> .	You are good/fine.
خویند.	<i>khooband</i> .	They are good/fine.

Note

Each of these words in the above chart is a full sentence. For example: **خویم**, **khoobam**, meaning "I am good/fine," is the short form of **من خوب هستم**, **man khoob hastam** ("I am good/fine"), so even though they look like just conjugations, they are not. They are just in short form and can be used in both written or spoken Persian.

Sample sentences

- من خیلی خوبم.
man kheyli khoobam.
"I am very well."
- شما خوید؟
shomaa khoobid?
"Are you well?"

3. Difference between written and spoken forms

As you have noticed by now, there are a lot of differences between spoken and written Persian.

In most cases, in spoken Persian we just shorten the words or sentences by dropping the full verb and replacing it with **-e**. For example: خوب است, **khoob ast**, "It is good," in spoken Persian becomes خوه, **khoobe**, "It is good."

Other times we change the letter **a** to **oo**. For example: باران, **baaraan**, "rain," in spoken Persian becomes بارون, **baaroon**, "rain."

Sometimes, it is just the different dialects or accents of the different cities of Iran, or there is no grammatical rule for why we change it. For example, the adjective "small" we write as کوچک, **koochak**, but in spoken Persian we say کوچیک, **koochik**.

However it is fine if you speak Persian just same as you write it. All Persian speakers will understand you without any difficulties. Once written forms of Persian language are mastered, spoken forms will help learners to understand native speakers better and to sound more fluent themselves.

Here are some words and phrases in both written and spoken forms:

Written Persian	Romanization	Spoken Persian	Romanization	English
کوچک	<i>koochak</i>	کوچیک	<i>koochik</i>	"small"
آمدم	<i>aamadam</i>	اومدم	<i>oomadam</i>	"I came"
برویم	<i>beravim</i>	بریم	<i>berim</i>	"Let's go"
می‌خواهم	<i>mikhaaham</i>	می‌خوام	<i>mikhaam</i>	"I want"
می‌آورم	<i>miaavaram</i>	می‌ارم	<i>miaaram</i>	"I will bring"
می‌کند	<i>mikonad</i>	می‌کنه	<i>mikone</i>	"He (She) is doing."

Examples:

Written Persian	Romanization	Spoken Persian	Romanization	English
به مدرسه برویم.	<i>be madrese beravim.</i>	به مدرسه بریم.	<i>be madrese berim.</i>	"Let's go to school."
پای راستم درد می‌کند.	<i>paa-ye raastam dard mikonad.</i>	پای راستم درد میکنه.	<i>paa-ye raastam dard mikone.</i>	"My right foot hurts."

Examples from the Dialogue

1. اتوبوسا (اتوبوس‌ها) معمولاً سر وقت نیستن (نیستند). من ریسک نمی‌کنم.
ootooboosaa (ootooboos-haa) ma'moolan sar-e vaqt nistan (nistan). man risk nemikonam.
"Buses aren't usually on time. I won't risk it."
2. من همیشه با مترو می‌رم (می‌روم). ولی خوب، معمولاً یک ساعت زودتر راه می‌افتم.
man hamishe baa metro miram (miravam). vali khob, ma'moolan yek saa'at zoodtar raah miyoftam.
"I always take the subway. But well, I usually set out one hour earlier."

Sample Sentences

1. این کنفرانس بهتر از کنفرانس قبلی بود.
in konferaans behtar az konferaans-e qabli boode.
"This conference was better than previous conferences."
2. سر وقت حاضر شدن در کلاس بهتر از هر چیزی است.
sare vaqt haazer shodan dar kelaas az har chiz behtar ast.
"To show up in the class on time is better than anything."
3. پیروزی در فوتبال به بهترین دفاع بستگی دارد.
piroozii dar footbaal be behtarin defaa' bastegi daarad.
"Victory in football depends on the best defense."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Punctuality in Tehran

sar-e vaqt boodan, سر وقت بودن, meaning "being on time," is a very important factor in being successful in the world. Iranian people used to be very relaxed on punctuality, but in the past 25 years there have been serious changes. Nowadays, companies demand punctuality from their employees, and with an improved transportation system in most of big cities in Iran, most of the people can get to work on time. Tehran's population is more than 8 million, and there are about 3 to 4 million more who come to Tehran for business purposes. With such a large population, the transportation system in Tehran is very crucial, as most of people use public transportation system to get to work.

Useful expression

1. سر وقت بودن
sar-e vaqt boodan
"being on time"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #8

Does Your Iranian Office Need an Upgrade?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Persian
 - Main
 - Romanization
 - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#8

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. آقای احمدی : مدیریت بودجه خوبی برای تغییر دکوراسیون اختصاص داده (است).
2. خانم میلانی : من فکر می‌کنم اول از همه باید صندلیهای (صندلیهای) راهروی طبقه اول رو (را) عوض کنن (کنند).
3. آقای احمدی : میز اتاق کنفرانس طبقه سوم ترک زیاد داره (دارد).
4. خانم میلانی : کاغذ دیواری (دیوارهای) واحد مهندسی خیلی کهنه شدن (شده اند).
5. آقای احمدی : باید یک (یه) آب سرد کن نو برای طبقه دوم بگیرن (بگیرند).
6. خانم میلانی : پنجره های طبقه پنجم سایبون (سایبان) لازم دارن (دارند).
7. آقای احمدی : پرده های طبقه چهارم رو (را) هم باید عوض کرد.

ROMANIZATION

1. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : modiriyat boodje-ye khoobi baraa-ye tagh'ir-e dekoraasiyon ekhtesaas daade ast.
2. Khanom-e Milaani : man fekr mikonam avval az hame baayad sandaliyaay-e (sandali-haa-ye) raahro-ye tabaqe-ye avval ro (raa) avaz konan (konand).
3. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : miz-e otaa-q-e konferaans-e tabaqe-ye sevom tarak ziyaad daare (daarad).
4. Khanom-e Milaani : kaaghaz divaari-haa-ye vaahed-e mohandesi kheyli kohne shodan (shode and).
5. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : baayad ye (yek) aab sard kon-e no baraa-ye tabagheh-ye dov-vom begiran (begirand).
6. Khanom-e Milaani : panjere haa-ye tabaqe-ye panjom saayeboon (saayebaan) laazem daaran (daarand).
7. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : parde haa-ye tabaqe-ye chaahaarrom ro (raa) ham baayad avaz kard.

ENGLISH

1. Mr. Ahmadi : Management has allocated a decent budget for the makeover.
2. Mrs. Milani : I think first of all, they should change the chairs in the first floor lobby.
3. Mr. Ahmadi : The table in the third floor conference room has many cracks.
4. Mrs. Milani : The wallpaper in the engineering unit is very old.
5. Mr. Ahmadi : They should get a new water cooler for the second floor.
6. Mrs. Milani : Windows on the fifth floor need outdoor shades.
7. Mr. Ahmadi : Curtains of the fourth floor should be changed.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
تغییر دکوراسیون	taghir-e dekoraasiyon	makeover	noun
اختصاص دادن	ekhtesaas daadan	to allocate	verb
سایبان	saayebaan	outdoor shade, sunshade	noun
اول از همه	aval az hame	first of all	phrase
کاغذ دیواری	kaaghaz divaari	wallpaper	noun
آب سرد کن	aab sard kon	water cooler	noun
مدیریت	modiriyat	management	noun
ترک	trarak	crack	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>من خانه ام را تغییر دکوراسیون داده ام.</p> <p><i>man khaane-am raa taghir-e dekoraasion daade-am.</i></p> <p>I have remodeled my house.</p>	<p>ما بودجه زیادی را به نوزادان اختصاص داده ایم.</p> <p><i>maa boodje-ye ziyaadi be nozaadaan ekhtesaas daade-'im.</i></p> <p>We have allocated a big budget to newborn babies.</p>
<p>آنها زیر سایبان نشسته اند.</p> <p><i>aanhaa zire saayebaan neshaste-and.</i></p> <p>They have been sitting under the sunshade.</p>	<p>معلم اول از همه وارد کلاس شده است.</p> <p><i>mo'allem aval az hame vaared-e kelaas shode-ast.</i></p> <p>The teacher has entered the classroom ahead of everyone.</p>

<p>شما کاغذ دیوارها را عوض کرده اید.</p> <p><i>shomaa kaaghaz divaari haa raa avaz karde-'id.</i></p> <p>You have changed the wallpapers.</p>	<p>او آب سرد کن را تعمیر کرده است.</p> <p><i>oo aabsardkon raa ta'mir karde-ast.</i></p> <p>He (or She) has repaired the water cooler.</p>
<p>با مدیریت جدید، کارها به نتیجه رسیده است.</p> <p><i>baa modiriyat-e jadid, kaar-haa be natije reside-ast.</i></p> <p>Under new management, work has succeeded.</p>	<p>با مدیریت رئیس جدید، کارها به نتیجه رسید.</p> <p><i>baa modiriyat-e ra'is-e jadid, kaar-haa be natije resid.</i></p> <p>Under the new director's management, the works succeeded.</p>
<p>آن دیوار ترک خورده است.</p> <p><i>aan divaar tarak khorde-ast.</i></p> <p>That wall has cracked.</p>	<p>از ترک سقف حمام آب می چکد.</p> <p><i>az tarake saqfe hammaam aab michekad.</i></p> <p>Water is dripping from the crack on the bathroom ceiling.</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

تغییر دکوراسیون

taghir-e dekoraasioon

"remodeling, changing the decoration, makeover"

taghir, "change" + *dekoraasioon*, "decoration" = تغییر دکوراسیون, *taghir-e dekoraasiyon*, "changing the decoration" in a house or an office building.

We use this phrase, when we talk about remodeling or redecorating of a building. The word دکوراسیون, *dekoraasiyon*, ("decoration") has been borrowed from the French language, and *taghir*, ("change") from the Arabic language.

For example:

- من خانه ام را تغییر دکوراسیون داده ام.
man khaaneh-am raa taghir-e dekoraasiyon داده am.
"I have remodeled my house."

اول از همه

av-val az hameh

"First of all"

Aval, "first" + *az*, "of" or "from," + *hameh*, "all" = اول از همه, *aval az hameh*, ("first of all").

We use this phrase when we want to say that some acts happened before others. There are no restrictions on using this phrase. It can be used in both written and colloquial Persian, just as it is.

Not just the meaning, but the structure of this phrase is exactly like the English.

For example:

- اول از همه باید درست را تمام کنی.
avval az hameh baayad darsat raa tamaam koni.
"First of all, you should finish your studies."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Present Perfect Tense (or ماضی نقلی, *maazi-ye naghli*, in Persian)

(مدیریت بودجه خوبی برای تغییر دکوراسیون اختصاص داده است).

modiriyat boodje-ye khoobi baraaye taghir-e dekoraasion ekhtesaas daade (ast).

"Management has allocated a decent budget for the makeover."

In this lesson, we will learn:

1. Present Perfect Tense (ماضی نقلی, *maazi-ye naghli*)
2. Difference between written and spoken forms
3. The past participle

1. Present Perfect Tense (ماضی نقلی, *maazi-ye naghli*)

In Persian, the present perfect is constructed by adding the present copulas to the past participle.

The formula is as follows: past tense of the verb in third person form + ه, (e)+ ام, am, (first person singular), ای, 'i, (second person singular), است, ast, (third person singular), ایم, 'im, (first person plural), اید, 'id (second person plural), اند, and, (third person plural). Please take a look at the examples below.

Persian	Romanization	English
داده ام	<i>daade-am</i>	I have given
داده ای	<i>daade-'i</i>	You have given
داده است	<i>daade-ast</i>	He (She) has given
داده ایم	<i>daade-'im</i>	We have given
داده اید	<i>daade-'id</i>	You have given
داده اند	<i>daade-and</i>	They have given

Persian	Romanization	English
رفته ام	<i>rafte-am</i>	I have gone
رفته ای	<i>rafte-'i</i>	You have gone
رفته است	<i>rafte-ast</i>	He (She) has gone
رفته ایم	<i>rafte-'im</i>	We have gone
رفته اید	<i>rafte-'id</i>	You have gone
رفته اند	<i>rafte-and</i>	They have gone

1. سعدی در شیراز دفن شده است.

sa'di dar shiraaz dafn shode-ast.

"Sa'adi is buried in Shiraz." (Lit. "Sa'adi has been buried in Shiraz.")

Examples:

Persian	Romanization	English
من به آنها اجازه رفتن داده ام.	<i>man be aanhaa ejaaze-ye raftan dade-am.</i>	I have given them permission to go.
معلم اول از همه وارد کلاس شده است.	<i>mo'allem avval az hame vaared-e kelaas shode-ast.</i>	First of all, the teacher has entered the classroom.
شما کاغذ دیوارها را عوض کرده اید.	<i>shomaa kaaghaz divaari-haa raa avaz karde-'id.</i>	You have changed the wallpaper..

2. Difference between written and spoken forms or between rafte-am and raftam.

Important Note: There is no difference between written or spoken Persian for present perfect tense. However, some people use the past tense instead of present perfect tense in spoken language, which grammatically is not correct, but has been accepted.

For example, we might use the past tense form (instead of present perfect) in informal settings, such as texting. But there is a nuance. The stress and intonation when we want to mean the present perfect connotation is different.

Let's take a look at this table:

Written Persian	Romanization	Spoken Persian	Romanization	English
رفته ام	<i>rafte-am</i>	رفتم	<i>raftam</i>	I have gone
رفته ای	<i>rafte-'i</i>	رفتی	<i>rafti</i>	You have gone
رفته است	<i>rafte-ast</i>	رفت	<i>rafteh</i>	He (She) has gone
رفته ایم	<i>rafte-'im</i>	رفتیم	<i>raftim</i>	We have gone
رفته اید	<i>rafte-'id</i>	رفتید	<i>raftid</i>	You have gone
رفته اند	<i>rafte-and</i>	رفتند	<i>raftand</i>	They have gone

3. The past participle

In Persian, there is no perfect participle; instead we have the past participle, which we need to construct the present perfect tense.

In Persian, the **past participle** is constructed by adding **ه**, (**e**) to the past stem of the verbs, whether the verb is simple, complex, or compound. It is always in third person singular form, and then add **-e**.

Is there any connection with the present perfect tense?

In order to construct the present perfect, past perfect, or the present perfect continuous, we first need to learn to construct the **past participle**.

For examples:

Persian	Romanization	English
افتاده	<i>oftaade</i>	Fallen
گفته	<i>gofte</i>	Said
دیده	<i>dide</i>	Seen
زندگی کرده	<i>zendegi karde</i>	Lived
خورده	<i>khorde</i>	Eaten

There is no conjugation for the past participle as it is always in third person, but we can add all six personal ending for all six persons. Please see the example below for the verb رفتن, **raftan**, "to go." The past participle of this verb is رفته, *rafte*, "gone."

Present perfect

Persian	Romanization	English
رفته ام	<i>rafte-am</i>	"I have gone"
رفته ای	<i>rafte-'i</i>	"You have gone"
رفته است	<i>rafte-ast</i>	"He/She has gone"
رفته ایم	<i>rafte-'im</i>	"We have gone"
رفته اید	<i>rafte-'id</i>	"You have gone"
رفته اند	<i>rafte-and</i>	"They have gone"

Sample sentences

Written Persian	Romanization	English
(او کتاب را دیده است).	<i>oo ketaab raa dide (ast).</i>	"He/She has seen the book."
(آن پسر رفته است).	<i>aan pesar rafte (ast).</i>	"That boy has gone."

Examples from the Dialogue

1. (کاغذ دیوارهای واحد مهندسی خیلی کهنه شده اند).
kaaghaz divaari-haa-ye vaahed-e mohandesesi kheili kohne shode (and).
"Wallpaper in the engineering unit is very old."

Sample Sentences

1. آن دیوار ترک خورده است.
aan divaar tarak khorde-ast.
"That wall has cracked."
2. او آب سرد کن را تعمیر کرده است.
oo aab-sard-kon raa ta'mir karde-ast.
"He(or She) has repaired the water cooler."
3. آنها زیر سایبان نشسته اند.
aanhaa zire sayebaan neshaste-and.
"They have been sitting under the sunshade."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Government companies and private companies

Iran's government is very large. Most industries are managed by the government. Natural resources, like oil and gas, electricity, water, minerals, precious metals, cars, tractors, buses, bikes, and even bicycles are produced by government-owned companies. There are many private companies which import commodities from abroad or produce them in Iran. Some of these private companies include famous Persian carpet producing companies or pistachio producing company. There are also companies that are owned jointly by the government and private companies, like pharmaceutical companies or airlines and bus companies. There are no restrictions on foreign or national candidates for a job. It really depends on the nature of the job. Some private or government companies may ask candidates to take a written exam before interviews.

Useful expression

1. (هما) هواپیمایی ملی ایران
Homa (havaa peymaai-ye mel-li-ye Iraan)
"Iran Air (An Iranian national airline)"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #9

Choosing a Topic for Your Persian Project

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Persian
 - Main
 - Romanization
 - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#9

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. هدی : دنبال یه موضوع خوب برای پروژه درس ادبیات می‌گردم.
2. فرهاد : بهتره با خود استاد مشورت کنی.
3. هدی : استاد این ترم خیلی سرش شلوغه (شلوغ است).
4. فرهاد : یه موضوع ساده انتخاب کن.
5. هدی : به نظرت زندگی‌نامه یک شاعر خوبه (خوب است)؟
6. فرهاد : اگه شناخته شده تر باشه (باشد) کارت راحت تره (راحت تر است).
7. هدی : مطلب بیشتری هم می‌تونم (می‌توانم) پیدا کنم.
8. فرهاد : زودتر هم تموم (تمام) میشه (می‌شود)، میتونی (می‌توانی) به درسهای دیگرت بررسی.

ROMANIZATION

1. Hodaa : donbaal-e ye mozoo'e khoob baraaye porozhe-ye dars-e adabiat migardam.
2. Farhaad : behtare baa khod-e ostaad mashverat koni.
3. Hodaa : ostaad in term kheyli saresh sholoogh (sholoogh ast).
4. Farhaad : ye mozoo'e saade entekhaab kon.
5. Hodaa : be nazaret zendeginaame-ye ye shaa'er khoobe (khoob ast).
6. Farhaad : age shenaakhte shode-tar baashe (baashad) kaaret raahat tare (raahat tar ast).
7. Hodaa : matlab-e bishtari ham mitoonam (mitavaanam) peydaa konam.
8. Farhaad : zoodtar ham tamoom (tamaam) mishe (mishavad), mitooni (mitavaani) be dars-haa-ye digaret beresi.

ENGLISH

- Hoda : I'm looking for a good topic for the literature class project.
- Farhad : You'd better to ask the professor himself for advice.
- Hoda : Professor's way too busy this semester.
- Farhad : Pick an easy topic.
- Hoda : Do you think a poet's biography is a good one?
- Farhad : The more well-known they are, the easier your job is.
- Hoda : I can find more content as well.
- Farhad : You can finish it earlier and you can see to your other subjects.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
استاد	ostaad	professor	noun
مشورت کردن	mashverat kardan	asking for advice	verb
شناخته شده	shenaakhte shode	known	verb
دیگر	digar	other, another	adjective & pronoun
زندگی‌نامه	zendegi-naame	biography	noun
شاعر	shaa'er	poet	noun
موضوع	mozoo'	topic, subject	noun
انتخاب کردن	entekhaab kardan	to choose, to pick, to select	verb
سر کسی شلوغ بودن	sar-e kesi sholoogh boodan	to be busy	phrase, adjective + verb
وقت گذاشتن برای چیزی	vaqt gozaashtan baraay-e chizi	to spend time on something	phrase, pronoun + verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>امروز استاد می تواند فارسی درس بدهد. <i>emrooz ostaad mitavaanad faarsi dars bedahad.</i> Today, the professor can teach Persian.</p>	<p>بهتره (بهتر است) قبل از هر تصمیم مهمی با والدینت مشورت کنی. <i>behtare (behtar ast) qabl az har tasmim-e mohemmi baa vaaledeynet mashverat koni.</i> You'd better ask for you parent's advice before making any important decision.</p>
--	--

<p>مشورت کردن با یک وکیل می تواند به تو کمک بکند. <i>mashverat kardan baa yek vakil mitavaanad be to komak bekonad.</i> Consulting with an attorney can help you.</p>	<p>یک هنرمند شناخته شده می تواند موفق تر باشد. <i>yek honarmand-e shenaakhte shode mitavaanad movaffaq-tar baashad.</i> A well-known artist can be more successful.</p>
<p>آنها می توانند یک روز دیگر در خانه بمانند. <i>aanhaa mitavaanand yek rooz-e digar dar khaane bemaanand.</i> They can stay at home another day.</p>	<p>خواندن زندگی نامه دانشمندان می تواند به بهتر فهمیدن آنها کمک بکند. <i>khaandan-e zendegi-naame-ye daaneshmandaan mitavaanad be behtar fahmidan-e aanhaa komak bekonad.</i> Reading biographies of scientists can help you understand them better.</p>
<p>یک شاعر می تواند درباره زندگی مردم شعر بسراید. <i>yek shaa'er mitavaanad darbaare-ye zendegi-ye mardom she'r besoraayad.</i> A poet could compose a poem about people's lives.</p>	<p>من می توانم این موضوع را بفهمم. <i>man mitavaanam in mozoo' raa befahmam.</i> I can understand this subject.</p>
<p>ما می توانستیم یک شهردار بهتر انتخاب کنیم. <i>maa mitavaanestim yek shahrdaar-e behtar entekhaab konim.</i> We could choose a better mayor.</p>	
<p>دوست دارم چیزی انتخاب کنم که هیچ گاه آن را امتحان نکردم. <i>doost daaram chizi entekhaab konam ke hich gaah aan raa emtahaan nakardam.</i> I would like to choose something I have never tried.</p>	<p>آن عینک زیبا را چطور انتخاب کردی؟ <i>aan eynak-e zibaa raa chetor entekhaab kardi?</i> How did you choose those beautiful pair of glasses?</p>
<p>ما میخوایم آپارتمان جدیدمونو از تو این کاتالوگ انتخاب کنیم. <i>maa mikhaaym aapaartemaan-e jadidemoon-o az too in kataalog entekhaab konim.</i> We are going to pick our new apartment from this catalogue.</p>	<p>چرا آن رنگ را انتخاب کردی؟ <i>cheraa aan rang raa entekhaab kardi?</i> Why did you choose that color?</p>
<p>هیچ کس نمیتواند برای شما انتخاب کند، این شما هستید که باید انجامش بدهید. <i>hich kas nemitavaanad baraaye shomaa entekhaab konad, in shomaa hastid ke baayad anjaamash bedahid.</i> Nobody can choose for you, you have to do it yourself.</p>	<p>من او را انتخاب کردم چونکه بیشترین تجربه را برای این کار داشت. <i>man oo raa entekhaab kardam chonke bishtarin tajrobe raa baraaye in kaar daasht.</i> I chose her because she had the most experience for the job.</p>

اگر سر او شلوغ باشد، نمی تواند درس بخواند.

agar sar-e oo sholoogh baashad, nemitavaanad dars bekhaanad.

If he is busy, he can not study.

من نمی توانم برای ورزش کردن وقت صرف بکنم.

man nemitavaanam baraay-e varzesh kardan vaqt sarf bekonam.

I can not spend time exercising.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

سر کسی شلوغ بودن

sare kesi sholoogh boodan

"to be busy"

Sar ("head")+ **kasi** ("someone") + **sholoogh boodan** ("been busy"). This phrase literally means "someone's head is busy," which is same as saying "someone is busy."

This is the best phrase you can use to mean you have been busy. There is another phrase: گرفتار بودن, **gereftar boodan**, ("been occupied"). It means that someone is involved in a task or project or has some problem which is keeping this person busy and active.

For example:

1. امروز سرم خیلی شلوغ است.

emrooz saram kheili sholoogh ast.

"Today, I am very busy."

دیگر

digar

"other, another"

This is what we can call a magic word. Let's see it more closely: دیگر, **digar**, means "other," "another," but it also has other meanings. Depending where and for what purpose we use it دیگر, **digar**, can also mean "more" or "any more" or "no more." Here are two examples: من دیگر تو را دوست ندارم, **man digar to raa doost nadaaram**, ("I do not love you anymore"); من دو تا سیب دیگر هم خوردم, **man do taa sib-e digar ham khordam**, ("I ate two more apples").

The best way of using this word in written and spoken Persian is just as it is (دیگر, **digar**), but there are times in both written or spoken Persian where it can be written or spoken as دیگه, **digeh**, which has the absolutely same meaning. In some places دیگه, **digeh** is a question tag, meaning "right," "isn't it," "whatever," "will you," etc., but the most general meaning is "other," "another."

Depending on the context of a sentence, **digar** can be an adjective or pronoun. The usage of this word is the same as using "other," "another," "more," "anymore" or "no more" in English. It all depends on the context of the sentence or a conversation. There is no restriction on using this phrase. It can be used in formal conversations too and is the same for both male or female.

For example:

1. دیگر با من صحبت نکن.

digar baa man sohbat nakon.

"Do not speak with me anymore."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Present Subjunctive

مطلب بیشتری هم می توانم (می توانم) پیدا کنم.

matlab-e bishtari ham mitoonam(mitavaanam) peydaa konam.

"I can find more content as well."

In this lesson, we will learn how to use:

1. The present subjunctive
2. The verb "to go"
3. Commonly used verbs: present stem

1. The Present Subjunctive

To construct the present subjunctive in Persian, first we have to choose the correct form of the verb from the infinitive verb of توانستن, *tavaanestan* ("to be able to"). For example, if the subject is the first person singular, the correct form of verb from the infinitive verb of توانستن, *tavaanestan* ("to be able to") is می, *mi*+ the present stem of the verb توان, *tavaan* + the personal endings for the present tense م, *m* = می توانم, *mitavaanam*, ("I can"). Then we add ب, *be* + the present stem of the verb+ the personal endings for the present tense.

For example, let's say we want to construct the present subjunctive of رفتن, *raftan*, ("to go") for the first person singular.

[*mi* - *tavaan* - personal ending] + [*be* - present stem of main verb - personal ending]

Mitavaanam, می توانم, ("I can") + ب, *be*+ the stem of *raftan*, which is رو, *rav* ("go") + the personal ending of the first person singular م, *m* = می توانم بروم, *mitavaanam beravam* ("I can go").

Let's do it one more time just in the Persian alphabet:

می+ توان + م (می توانم) + ب + رو+ م (بروم) = می توانم بروم

Note1: The personal ending for the main verb and auxiliary verb are always the same, and it depends on which person it is for (first person, second person, third person, etc.).

Note2: There are some verbs for which you can simply drop the prefix *be*, but you will learn them naturally as you expose yourself to native spoken and written Persian.

Conjugation chart

Persian	Romanization	English
می توانم بروم.	<i>mitavaanam beravam</i>	I can go.
می توانی بروی.	<i>mitavaani beravi</i>	You can go.
می توانند بروند.	<i>mitavaanad beravad</i>	They can go.
می توانیم برویم.	<i>mitavaanim beravim</i>	We can go.
می توانید بروید.	<i>mitavaanid beravid</i>	You can go.
می توانند بروند.	<i>mitavanand beravand</i>	They can go.

Sample sentences

Persian	Romanization	English
من می توانم تنها به خانه بروم.	<i>man mitavaanam tanhaa be khaane beravam.</i>	"I can go home alone."
آنها نمی توانند به سفر بروند.	<i>anhaa nemitavaanand be safar breavand.</i>	"They can't go to trip."
شما می توانید ورزش کنید.	<i>shomaa mitavaanid varzesh konid.</i>	"You can exercise."

2. The verb "to go"

Raftan, رفتن, "to go," is an infinitive verb. The stem is رو, *rav*, "movement." Depending on the subject of the sentence, it will take different personal endings and a different prefix.

Here is a conjugation chart with both affirmative and negative forms:

Persian (affirmative)	Romanization	Persian (negative)	Romanization	English affirmative / negative
روم	<i>ravam</i>	نروم	<i>naravam</i>	I go. / I will not go.
روی	<i>ravi</i>	نروی	<i>naravi</i>	You go. / You will not go.
رود	<i>ravad</i>	نرود	<i>naravad</i>	He (She) go. / She will not go.
رویم	<i>ravim</i>	نرویم	<i>naravim</i>	We go. / We will not go.
روید	<i>ravid</i>	نروید	<i>naravid</i>	You go. / You will not go.
روند	<i>ravand</i>	نروند	<i>naravand</i>	They go. / They will not go.

Sample sentences

Persian	Romanization	English
ما به خانه رویم.	<i>maa be khaane ravim.</i>	"We go home."
ما به خانه نرویم.	<i>maa be khaane naravam.</i>	"We will not go home."
چرا شما روید؟	<i>cheraa shomaa ravid?</i>	"Why will you go?"
چرا شما نروید؟	<i>cheraa shomaa naravid?</i>	"Why will not you go?"

Note: Grammatically, the above sample sentences are absolutely correct but in modern Persian we do not use them in writing and speaking. This form of verbs can be found in old books of the 13th century and older. In modern Persian, we use the above verbs with prefix of می, *mi*. Please check the next topic.

3. Commonly used verbs: present stem and present verb

As already mentioned, the stem for the infinitive verb رفتن, *raftan* is رو, *rav*.

To construct a present verb, we follow the below formula:

Present prefix (می, *mi*) + present stem + present personal ending (میری در می‌رند)

This verb is necessary when we use present tense in Persian writings or conversations.

Chart with the present tense:

Persian	Romanization	English
می‌روم	<i>miravam</i>	I go.
می‌روی	<i>miravi</i>	You go.
می‌رود	<i>miravad</i>	He (She) go.
می‌رویم	<i>miravim</i>	We go.
می‌روید	<i>miravid</i>	You go.
می‌روند	<i>miravand</i>	They go.

Sample sentences

Persian (affirmative)	Romanization	Persian (negative)	Romanization	English affirmative / negative
شما به خانه می‌روید.	<i>shomaa be khaane miravid.</i>	شما به خانه نمی‌روید.	<i>shomaa be khaane nemiravid.</i>	"You will go home." / "You will not go home."
من به دانشگاه می‌روم.	<i>man be daneshgaah miravam.</i>	من به دانشگاه نمی‌روم.	<i>man be daaneshgaah nemiravam.</i>	"I will go to university." / "I will not go to university."

Sample Sentences

- من می‌توانم این موضوع را بفهمم.
man mitavaanam in mozoo' raa befahmam.
"I can understand this subject."
- امروز استاد می‌تواند فارسی درس بدهد.
emrooz ostaad mitavaanad faarsi dars bedahad.
"Today, the professor can teach Persian."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

University and student life

Public universities are free in Iran. Almost 50% of students come from other cities and they live in university accommodations. They are crowded in there and perhaps it's not as fun as campus life in Europe or North America, but it's not that bad and it is very cheap. Each year, many students apply to master's programs in Western universities and leave the country. Some Iranian professors in Iranian universities have studied in Stanford, Washington, Tennessee, Oklahoma, and other US universities. Most university students in Iran are female, and unlike some Middle Eastern countries there are no restrictions on education, work, driving a car, or even flying planes for female citizens of Iran. In Iran, there are also a lot of private universities. In almost every city and even some villages in Iran, you can find at least one private university.

Useful expression

1. دانشگاه آزاد.

daneshgaah-e azaad

"private university"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #10

You Can Always Talk About the Weather in Persian!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Persian
 - Main
 - Romanization
 - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#10

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. مریم : هواشناسی میگه (می گوید) فردا به احتمال زیاد بارونیه (بارانی خواهد بود).
2. جرج : یعنی پروازمون (پروازمان) کنسل میشه (خواهد شد؟)
3. مریم : تا نریم (نرویم) فرودگاه معلوم نمیشه (نخواهد شد).
4. جرج : وقتی رفته بودم خرید هوا خیلی سرد بود.
5. مریم : من گفتم پالتوت رو (را) با خودت ببر.
6. جرج : امسال هوا خیلی سرده (سرد است) فکر کنم به زودی برف بیاد.
7. مریم : من هوای برفی رو (را) خیلی دوست دارم.
8. جرج : پس بیا بریم (برویم) چکمه گرم بخریم.
9. مریم : حتماً، فکر خوبییه (خوبی است).

ROMANIZATION

1. maryam : havaa shenaasi mige (migooyad) fardaa be ehtemaal-e ziaad baarooniye (baaraani khaahad bood.)
2. Jorj : yani parvaazemoon (parvaazemaan) kansel mishe (khaahad shod)?
3. maryam : taa narim (naravim) foroodgaah ma'loom nemishe (nakhaahad shod.)
4. Jorj : vaqti rafte boodam kharid vaaqe'an havaa kheyli sard bood.
5. maryam : man goftam paaltot (ro) raa baa khodet bebar.
6. Jorj : emsaal havaa kheyli sarde (sard ast) fekr konam be zoodi barf biyaad.
7. maryam : man havaa-ye barfi ro (raa) kheyli doost daaram.
8. Jorj : pas biaa berim (beravim) chakme-ye garm bekharim.
9. maryam : hatman, fekr-e khoobiye (khoobi ast).

ENGLISH

1. Maryam : The weather forecast says most likely it will be rainy tomorrow.
2. George : Does it mean our flight will be canceled?
3. Maryam : We won't know unless we go to the airport.
4. George : It was really freezing when I went shopping.
5. Maryam : I told you it's really windy; take your coat along.
6. George : This year it's so cold that I think it's going to snow soon.
7. Maryam : I love it when it snows.
8. George : Then, let's go and buy warm boots.
9. Maryam : Sure, it is a good idea.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
هوای بادی	havaay-e baadi	windy weather	proper noun
پرواز	parvaaz	flight	noun
هوای برفی	havaa-ye barfi	snowy weather	adjective
به همراه بردن	be hamraah bordan	to take along	phrase(verb+adverb)
برف آمدن	barf aamadan	to snow	verb
دقیقاً	daqiqan	exactly	adverb
هواشناسی	havaa shenaasi	weather forecast	noun
هوای خیلی سرد/منجمد کننده	havaa-ye kheyli sard / monjamed konande	freezing	adjective
فرودگاه	foroodgaah	airport	noun
خرید	kharid	shopping	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>هوای فردا بادی خواهد بود. <i>havaay-e fardaa baadi khaahad bood.</i> Tomorrow it will be windy.</p>	<p>امروز ظهر به ایران پرواز خواهم کرد. <i>emrooz zohr be Iraan parvaaz khaaham kard.</i> Today at noon, I am going to fly to Iran.</p>
--	--

<p>این پرواز مزخرف بود.</p> <p><i>in parvaaz mozakhraf bood.</i></p> <p>This flight was awful.</p>	<p>هوای برفی به فروش لباس گرم کمک خواهد کرد.</p> <p><i>havaa-ye barfi be foroosh-e lebaas-e garm komak khaahad kard.</i></p> <p>Snowy weather will help to sell warm clothes.</p>
<p>به همراه بردن آب کافی برای ورزش فردا لازم خواهد بود.</p> <p><i>be hamraah bordan-e aab-e kaafi baraaye varzesh-e fardaa laazem khaahad bood.</i></p> <p>Taking enough water is necessary for tomorrow's exercise.</p>	<p>ماه آینده برف زیادی خواهد بارید.</p> <p><i>maah-e aayande barf ziyaadi khaahad baarid.</i></p> <p>Next month, a lot of snow will fall.</p>
<p>دقیقاً چی گفت؟</p> <p><i>daqiqan chi (che chizi) goft?</i></p> <p>What did he (she) say exactly?</p>	<p>دقیقاً کجا خواهید رفت؟</p> <p><i>daqiqan kojaa khaahid raft?</i></p> <p>Where are you going exactly?</p>
<p>هواشناسی وضعیت هوای فردا را اعلام خواهد کرد.</p> <p><i>havaashenaasi vaz'iyat-e havway-e fardaa ra elaam khaahad kard.</i></p> <p>The weather forecast will announce tomorrow's weather conditions.</p>	
<p>فرودگاه تهران فردا باز خواهد شد.</p> <p><i>foroodgaah-e tehraan fardaa baaz khaahad shod.</i></p> <p>Tehran airport will be open tomorrow.</p>	<p>امروز هیچ پروازی فرودگاه را ترک نمیکند، به دلیل هوای طوفانی.</p> <p><i>emrooz hich parvaazi foroodgaah raa tark nemikonad, be dalil-e havaa-ye toofaani.</i></p> <p>There are no flights leaving the airport today, due to the stormy weather.</p>

من برای خرید لباس به بازار خواهم رفت.

man baraaye kharid-e lebaas be baazaar khaaham raft.

I'll go to the market to buy clothes.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

هوا خیلی منجمد کننده بود

Havaa vaaghe'an kheily sard bood.

"The weather was really freezing."

havaa vaaghe'an kheily sard bood, ("It was really freezing"). واقعا , ***vaaghean***, ("really"), هوا , ***havaa***, ("air," "weather") منجمد شدن , ***monjamed shodan/kardan***, ("freeze"), ***bood***, ("was").

We use this sentence when the weather is extremely cold.

For example:

1. فردا هوا خیلی سرد/منجمد کننده خواهد بود.

havaay-e fardda yek havaay-e monjamed konandeh khaahad bood.

"It will be freezing tomorrow."

به همراه بردن
beh hamrah bordan
"to take along"

بردن به همراه بردن, *Beh hamraah bordan*, ("to take along") = به, *beh*, ("to") + همراه, *hamraah*, ("along") + بردن, *bordan*, ("take," "taking").

We use this phrase when we are taking something or someone with us.

For example:

1. در سفر به شیراز من پسر را به همراه بردم.
dar safar beh Shiraaz man pesaram raa beh hamraah bordam.
"On the trip to Shiraz, I took my son along."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Future Tense

(هواشناسی میگه (می گوید) فردا به احتمال زیاد بارونیه (بارانی خواهد بود).
havaa shenaasi mige (migooyad) fardaa be ehtemaal-e ziaad baarooniye (baaraani khaahad bood.)
"The weather forecast says, most likely it will be rainy tomorrow."

In this lesson, we will learn:

1. The future tense
-

1. Future Tense

The future tense is formed by taking the present tense form خواستن, *khaastan*, "to want," and conjugating it for the correct person (the present tense form of خواستن, *khaastan*, "to want," is خواه, *khaah*), plus the singular third person of the main verb (which is also the past tense of the verb for the third person).

For example: The singular third person for the verb خوردن, *khordan* ("to eat") is خورد, *khord*, meaning "he/she ate"; therefore, the future tense of this verb will be as below:

Persian	Romanization	English
خواهم خورد.	<i>khaaham khord</i>	"I will eat"
خواهی خورد.	<i>khaahi khord</i>	"You will eat"
خواهد خورد.	<i>khaahad khord</i>	"He/She will eat."
خواهیم خورد.	<i>khaahim khord</i>	"We will eat."
خواهید خورد.	<i>khaahid khord</i>	"You will eat."
خواهند خورد.	<i>khaahand khord</i>	"They will eat."

Sample sentences

Persian	Romanization	English
در ماه آینده بیشتر وقت خود را به مطالعه خواهم گذرانم.	<i>dar maah-e aayande bishtar-e vaqt-e khod raa be motaale'e khaaham gozaraand.</i>	"In the next month, I'll spend most of my time studying."
ناهار را پس از سخنرانی سرو خواهند کرد.	<i>naahaar raa pas az sokhanraani serv khaahand kard.</i>	"They will serve the lunch after the speech."
تولید از سال آینده آغاز خواهد شد.	<i>tolid az saal-e aayande aaghaz khaahad shod.</i>	"Production will start from next year."

In spoken Persian, we never use this form. We use the simple present tense.

Here is how you form this tense: (می) *mi* + present stem + personal present ending.

The table below shows the conjugation of شدن (*shodan*), which means "to get" or "to become" for the present tense.

Persian (written)	Romanization	Persian (spoken)	Romanization	English
می شوم	<i>mishavam</i>	می شم	<i>misham</i>	"I will become/get."
می شوی	<i>mishavi</i>	می شی	<i>mishi</i>	"You will become/get."
می شود	<i>mishavad</i>	میشه	<i>misheh</i>	"He/She become/get."
می شویم	<i>mishavim</i>	می شیم	<i>mishsim</i>	"We will become/get."
می شوید	<i>mishavid</i>	می شید / می شین	<i>mishid/mishin</i>	"You will become/get."
می شوند	<i>mishavand</i>	می شن	<i>mishan</i>	"They will become/get."

Examples from the Dialogue

- یعنی پروازمون (پروازمان) کنسل میشه (خواهد شد)؟
yani parvaazemoon (parvaazemaan) kansel mishe (khaahad shod)?
"Does It mean our flight will be canceled?"
- (تا نریم (نرویم) فرودگاه معلوم نمیشه (نخواهد شد).
taa narim (naravim) foroodgaah ma'loom nemishe (nakhaahad shod.)
"We won't know unless we go to the airport."

Sample Sentences

1. هوای برفی به فروش لباس گرم کمک خواهد کرد.
havaa-ye barfi be foroosh-e lebaas-e garm komak khaahad kard.
"Snowy weather will help to sell warm clothes."
2. به همراه بردن آب کافی برای ورزش فردا لازم خواهد بود.
be hamraah bordan-e aab-e kaafi baraaye varzesh-e fardaa laazem khaahad bood.
"Taking enough water will be necessary for tomorrow's exercise."
3. من برای خرید لباس به بازار خواهم رفت.
man baraaye kharid-e lebaas be baazaar khaaham raft.
"I'll go to the market to buy clothes."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Iran's climate and geography

Iran has hot and humid weather in the south and southwest, hot and dry in the east and south-east, cold in the west and northwest, and mild and rainy in the north. There are 2 big deserts in the east of Iran and large green forests in the north. While the southwestern city of Abadan can reach 50°C in the summer, the city of Saghez on the same day can be as cold as 5°C.

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #11

Getting Groceries in Iran

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

11

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. شیرین هدایت : این برنج خیلی خوبیه (خوبی است) پنج کیلو بگیریم؟
2. آقای احمدی : می خوام (می خواهی) بیشتر بگیریم؟
3. شیرین هدایت : نه فعلاً پنج کیلو بسه (بس است) کیلویی نه هزار و پونصد (پانصد) تومنه (تومان است).
4. آقای احمدی : گرونه (گران است).
5. شیرین هدایت : شیر یادم رفت.
6. آقای احمدی : من می رم (می روم) میآرم (می آورم).
7. شیرین هدایت : تاریخ انقضاش رو (انقضایش را) حتماً چک کن.
8. آقای احمدی : باشه (باشد).
9. شیرین هدایت : فقط شیر کم چربی بیار (بیاور).

ROMANIZATION

1. Shirin Hedaayat : in berenj-e kheyli khoobiye (khoobi ast) panj kiloo begirim?
2. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : mikhaay (mikhaahi) bishtar begirim?
3. Shirin Hedaayat : na felan panj kiloo base (bas ast) kilooyi noh hezaar-o poonsad (paansad) tomane (toomaan ast).
4. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : geroone (geraan ast).
5. Shirin Hedaayat : shir yaadam raft.
6. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : man miram (miravam) miaaram (miaaravam).
7. Shirin Hedaayat : taarikh-e enqezaash ro (enqezaayash raa) hatman check kon.
8. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : baashe (baashad).
9. Shirin Hedaayat : faqat shir-e kam charbi biyaar (biyaavar).

ENGLISH

1. Shirin Hedayat : It's very good rice! Let's get five kilos.
2. Mr. Ahmadi : Do you want to get more?
3. Shirin Hedayat : No, 5 kilos will do for now! It's 9500 Tomans a kilo!
4. Mr. Ahmadi : Pricey.
5. Shirin Hedayat : I forgot the milk.
6. Mr. Ahmadi : I'll go get it.
7. Shirin Hedayat : Make sure to check the expiration date.
8. Mr. Ahmadi : Ok.
9. Shirin Hedayat : Just bring low-fat milk.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
باشه	baashe	ok	verb
گران	geraan	expensive	adjective
تاریخ انقضا	taarikh-e enqezaa	expiration date	noun
شیر	shir	milk	noun
برای اطمینان	baraay-e etminaan	to ensure	verb
آوردن	aavardan	to bring	verb
برنج	berenj	rice	noun
به جای	be jaa-ye	instead of	adverb
بس بودن	bas boodan	to be enough	verb
بیشتر	bishtar	more	adverb, determiner, pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

باشه با هم بریم مدرسه. <i>baashe baa ham berim madrese.</i> Okay, let's go to school together.	ما نباید اجناس گران بخریم. <i>maa nabaayad ajnaas-e geraan bekharam</i> We should not buy expensive goods.
--	--

<p>او گران‌ترین شراب را در مغازه مشروب فروشی گرفت.</p> <p><i>oo geraantarin sharaab ra dar maqaazeye mashroob forooshi gereft.</i></p> <p>He got the most expensive wine in the liquor shop.</p>	<p>زندگی در توکیو بسیار گران است.</p> <p><i>zendegi dar tokyo besiaar geraan ast.</i></p> <p>It is expensive to live in Tokyo.</p>
<p>آن ماشین بسیار گران است، نمی‌خرمش.</p> <p><i>aan maashin besiaar geraan ast, nemikharamesh.</i></p> <p>That car is too expensive; I won't buy it.</p>	<p>شما نباید مواد غذایی را بعد از تاریخ انقضاء آنها مصرف بکنید.</p> <p><i>shomaa nabaayad mavaad-e ghazaaei raa bad az taarikh-e enqezaa-e aanhaa masraf bekonid.</i></p> <p>You must not consume food products after their expiration date.</p>
<p>لطفاً شیر صبحانه را گرم بکن.</p> <p><i>lotfan shir-e sobhaaneh raa garm bekon.</i></p> <p>Please heat up the breakfast's milk.</p>	<p>برای اطمینان داشتن از سلامتی خود باید هر سال یک آزمایش کامل بدنی انجام دهیم.</p> <p><i>baraay-e etminaan daashtan az salaamati-ye khod baayad har saal yek azmaayesh-e kaamel badani anjaam bedahim.</i></p> <p>To ensure good health, we must do a full body test every year.</p>
<p>شوهرش کیک رو (کیک را) آورد.</p> <p><i>shoharesh keyk ro (keyk raa) aavord.</i></p> <p>Her husband brought the cake.</p>	<p>این کتاب رو هم بیار.</p> <p><i>in ketaab ro ham biyaar.</i></p> <p>Bring this book too.</p>
<p>اگر هر چه زودتر اسناد را برای من نیاوری، اخراجی.</p> <p><i>agar har che zoodtar asnaad raa baraaye man nayaavari, ekhraaji.</i></p> <p>If you don't bring me the documents as soon as possible, you're fired.</p>	<p>از ما خواسته شده تا برای خودمان نوشیدنی به مهمانی بیاوریم.</p> <p><i>az maa khaaste shode taa baraaye khodemaan nooshidani be mehmaani biaavarim.</i></p> <p>We were asked to bring our own drinks to the party.</p>
<p>امروز باید خیلی برنج بخرم.</p> <p><i>emrooz baayad kheyli beranj bekham.</i></p> <p>Today I should buy a lot of rice.</p>	<p>به جای شیر گاو شیر بز بخر.</p> <p><i>be jaa-ye shir-e gaav shir-e boz bekhar.</i></p> <p>Instead of cow's milk, buy goat's milk.</p>
<p>اگر غذا بس نبود به من زنگ بزن تا بیشتر بفرستم.</p> <p><i>agar ghazaa bas nabood be man zang bezan taa bishtar befrestam.</i></p> <p>If the food was not enough, call me so I can send more.</p>	<p>تو باید بیشتر بخوابی.</p> <p><i>to baayad bishtar bekhaabi.</i></p> <p>You must sleep more.</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

باشه
baasheh
 "Ok, Okay"

Literally, باشه, **baasheh** means "so be it." "Ok" is an international word, and Iranians are no exception. They use it a lot; however, the Persian word باشه, **basaheh** ("Ok") is used as much as "Ok."

We use باشه, **baasheh** ("Ok") whenever we want to show that we agree on a matter with others. It is used exactly as "Ok" is used in English.

For example:

- باشه من هم میام.
basheh man ham miyaam.
"Okay, I'm coming too."

برای اطمینان **baraay-e etminaan** "to ensure"

Let's break this phrase down: برای اطمینان, **baraay-e etminaan**, ("to make sure"), برای, **baraaye**, ("for"), اطمینان, **etminaan**, ("making sure"). برای اطمینان. **Baraay-e etminaan** literally means "for making sure," which is the same as saying "to make sure."

This phrase is used whenever we want to emphasize the security of a matter. It can be insurance for a tangible thing, like a car, or a non-tangible thing, like someone's health.

For example:

- برای اطمینان پول کافی در سفر همراه داشته باشید.
baraay-e etminaan pool-e kaafi dar safar hamraah daashteh baashid.
"Just make sure to have enough money with you when traveling."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Imperative Form

این برنج خیلی خوبیه (خوبی است) پنج کیلو بگیریم؟
in berenj-e kheyli khoobiye (khoobi ast) panj kiloo begirim?
"It's very good rice! Let's get five kilos?"

In this lesson, we will learn:

1. The imperative forms of verbs

1.The imperative form of verbs in Persian

The imperative mood is made from the subjunctive mood, with the difference that the ending for the second person singular is omitted. In Persian, all six persons have an imperative form.

Present form of the imperative:

It is made by adding **بِ**, *be* to the present stem of the verb:

بِ, *Be* + present stem = the present imperative

Example: the present stem of نوشتن, *nevestan*, "to write" is نویس, *nevis*, "write." So the imperative in the present tense is formed like this:

بِ, *Be* + نویس, *nevis* + personal ending (م-ردریم-دیدند)

Please see the chart below for all six persons. Remember in the imperative form the ending for second person singular is omitted.

Persian	Romanization	English
بنویسم	<i>benevisam</i>	"I may write."
بنویس	<i>benevis</i>	"Write!"
بنویسد	<i>benevisad</i>	"He (She) may write."
بنویسیم	<i>benevisim</i>	"We may write."
بنویسید	<i>benevisid</i>	"You may write."
بنویسند	<i>benevisand</i>	"They may write."

Sample sentences

Persian	Romanization	English
نام خود را بنویس.	<i>naame khod raa benevis.</i>	"Write your name."
من باید یک کتاب بنویسم.	<i>man baayad yek ketaab benevisam.</i>	"I must write a book."
آنها باید انشاء بنویسند.	<i>aanhaa baayad enshaa' benevisand.</i>	"They must write essays."

Negative form:

The negative form of present subjunctive (and consequently, present imperative) is made by replacing **بِ**, *be-* with **نَ**, *na-*.

Let's see the some examples in negative form:

Persian	Romanization	English
نام خود را ننویس.	<i>naame khod raa nanevis.</i>	"Do not write your name."
!اون (آن) لباس رو (را) نخر	<i>oon (aan) lebaas ro (raa) nakahr!</i>	"Don't buy that shirt."
!اینقدر شیرینی جات نخور	<i>inqadr shirinijaat nakhoor!</i>	"Don't eat this many sweets!"

Note: When we use an auxiliary verb like باید *baayad*, which means "should," "must" or "have to," the main verb's subjunctive form is used. And for negating, we add *na* to باید and it changes to نباید.

Examples:

Persian	Romanization	English
من نباید بهش (به او) زنگ بزنم!	<i>man nabaayad behesh (be oo) zang bezanam.</i>	"I shouldn't call him."
سارا نباید انقدر بازی کنه (کند).	<i>saaraa nabaayad enqadr baazi kone.</i>	"Sarah shouldn't be playing this much!"

Examples from the Dialogue

- می خواهی (می خواهی) بیشتر بگیریم؟
mikhaay (mikhaahi) bishtar begirim?
"Do you want to get more? "
- (فقط شیر کم چربی بیار) بیاور.
faqat shir-e kam charbi biyaar (biyaavar).
"Just bring low-fat milk."

Sample Sentences

- امروز باید خیلی برنج بخرم.
emrooz baayad kheyli beranj bekharim.
"Today I should buy a lot of rice."
- باشه با هم بریم مدرسه.
baashe baa ham berim madrese.
"Okay, let's go to school together."
- ما نباید اجناس گران بخریم.
maa nabaayad ajnaas-e geraan bekharim
"We should not buy expensive goods."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Staple food in Iran

In Iran, rice and bread are the most eaten foods. There are various kinds of breads that people eat with their breakfast. A typical and simple breakfast is sweetened black tea with bread, which can be *lavash* (thin flat bread) or *sangak* (bread cooked over hot stones) with feta cheese. For lunch, rice is a must. A typical lunch is long grain, cooked rice with saffron or *zereshk* (barberry) and a lamb meat stew, lamb kebab, chicken kebab, or fish with a salty yogurt drink (flat or sparkling), pickles, salads, and herbs. Dinner is lighter than lunch, but still it can be eaten with rice or bread, though in smaller quantities. Iranian never eat rice for breakfast. Remember that Iran is a tapestry and a large country, so people from different backgrounds have different diets. That said, "Cholo Kabab," which is charcoal-roasted minced beef or lamb with roasted tomato and rice and saffron, without any doubt, is the national food of Iran.

Useful expression

1. کم بخور همیشه بخور.

kam bekhor hamishe bekhor.

"Eat less, eat always."

This sentence is a **zarb ol masal** (ضرب المثل), or "expression." It's used to emphasize not overeating. Our ancestors recommended to stop eating a few bites before we feel totally full to ensure good health.

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #12

What Do You Like to Eat in Iran?

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#12

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. سیما : هدی می گفت ماهی پلوشون (پلوشان) خوشمزه اس (است).
2. فرهاد : من فسنجون رو (فسنجان را) میخوام (می خواهم) امتحان کنم.
3. سیما : باید بررسی ببینی شیرینه (شیرین است) یا ترشه (ترش است)?
4. فرهاد : برام (برای من) فرقی نمیکنه (نمی کند). هر دومزه را (رو) دوست دارم.
5. سیما : سوپ قارچ سفارش بدیم (بدهیم)?
6. فرهاد : این خامه داره (دارد). من خامه دوست ندارم.
7. سیما : سوپ کلم چی؟ تند هم هست.
8. فرهاد : من غذای تند دوست ندارم.
9. سیما : پس باید سوپ عدس سفارش بدیم (بدهیم).
10. فرهاد : این انتخاب بهتریه (بهتری است).

ROMANIZATION

1. Simaa : hoda migoft maahi poloshoon (poloshaan) khoshmaze ast.
2. Farhaad : man fesenjoon ro (fesanjaan raa) mikhaam (mikhaaham) emtehaan konam.
3. Simaa : baayad beporsi bebini shirine (shirin ast) yaa torshe (torsh ast)?
4. Farhaad : baraam (baraaye man) farqi nemikone (nemikonad). har do maze raa doost daaram.
5. Simaa : soop-e qarch sefaaresh bedim (bedahim)?
6. Farhaad : in khaame daare (daarad). man khaame doost nadaaram.
7. Simaa : soop-e kalam chi? tond ham hast.
8. Farhaad : man ghazaay-e tond doost nadaaram.
9. Simaa : pas baayad soop-e adas sefaaresh bedim (bedahim).
10. Farhaad : in entekhaab-e behtariye (behtari ast).

ENGLISH

1. Sima : Hoda said their mahi polo is yummy!
2. Farhad : I want to try fesenjoon!
3. Sima : You should ask to see if it's sweet or sour.
4. Farhad : For me, it doesn't matter. I like both tastes.
5. Sima : Shall we order mushroom soup?
6. Farhad : It has cream in it. I don't like cream.
7. Sima : How about cabbage soup? It's spicy as well!
8. Farhad : I don't like spicy food.
9. Sima : Then we must order lentil soup.
10. Farhad : That's a better choice.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
امتحان کردن	emtehaan kardan	to try, to try on	verb
پرسیدن	porsidan	to ask	verb
سوپ قارچ	soop-e qaarch	mushroom soup	noun
خامه	khaame	sour cream, cream	noun
ترش	torsh	sour	adjective
برام فرقی نمیکنه (برای من فرقی نمیکند)	baraam farqi nemikone (barraye man farqi nemikonad).	It is the same for me.	sentence
خوشمزه	khoshmaze	delicious	adjective
تند	tond	spicy	adjective
شیرینی	shirini	sweet	noun
انتخاب	entekhaab	choice	noun/adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>شما باید غذای ژاپنی را امتحان کنید.</p> <p><i>shomaa baayad ghazaa-ye zhaaponi raa emtehaan konid.</i></p> <p>You must try Japanese food.</p>	<p>آدرس خانه دوستم را ازش پرسیدم.</p> <p><i>aadress-e khaane-ye doostam raa azash porsidam.</i></p> <p>I asked him (her) for my friend's house address.</p>
--	---

<p>باید این سوپ فارچ را امتحان کنید.</p> <p><i>baayad in soop-e qaarch raa emtehaan konid.</i></p> <p>You must try this mushroom soup.</p>	<p>حتماً قهوه بدون خامه بنوشید.</p> <p><i>hatman qahveye bedoon-e khaame benooshid.</i></p> <p>Make sure to drink coffee without cream.</p>
<p>شما حتماً غذای ترش دوست ندارید.</p> <p><i>shomaa hatman ghazaa-ye torsh doost nadaarid.</i></p> <p>Surely, you do not like sour food.</p>	<p>برای من اصلاً فرقی نمی‌کنه که شما به سینما بروید یا نه.</p> <p><i>baraaye man aslan farqi nemikone ke shomaa be sinemaa beravid yaa na.</i></p> <p>I do not care that you get to go to the movie theater or not.</p>
<p>من باید یک غذای خوشمزه بپزم.</p> <p><i>man baayad yek ghazaa-ye khoshmaze bepazam.</i></p> <p>I have to cook a delicious meal.</p>	<p>نباید غذای تند بخورم چون التهاب روده دارم.</p> <p><i>nabaayad ghazaa-ye tond bekhoram chon varam-e roode daaram.</i></p> <p>I should not eat spicy foods because I have inflammatory bowel disease.</p>
<p>برای جشن کدام شیرینی بهتر است؟</p> <p><i>baraaye jashn kodaam shirini behtar ast?</i></p> <p>Which sweets are better for the celebration?</p>	<p>ما باید یک مدیر جدید انتخاب کنیم.</p> <p><i>maa baayad yek modir-e jadid entekhaab konim.</i></p> <p>We must choose a new manager.</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

برام فرقی نمی‌کنه.

baraam farqi nemikoneh

"It does not matter to me"

Let's break this phrase down: *baraam farqi nemikoneh*, ("it is the same for me") = *برام*, *baraam*, ("for me") + *فرقی*, *farqi*, ("difference") + *نمی‌کنه*, *nemikoneh*, ("do not"). Literally, "it doesn't change anything for me." It can also be interpreted as "it doesn't matter."

We use this sentence when we want to show our absolute lack of interest in a matter or action.

For example:

1. برام فرقی نمی‌کنه کجا بخوابم.

baraam farqi nemikoneh kojaa bekhaabam.

"It does not matter where I sleep."

انتخاب بهتر

entekhaab-e behtar

"Better choice"

When we use *بهتر*, *behtar* ("better"), it always comes after *انتخاب*, *entekhaab* ("choice"), but when we use *بهترین*, *behtarin* ("best"), it always comes before *انتخاب*, *entekhaab* ("choice").

Examples:

1. سفر به شیراز یک انتخاب بهتر است.

Safar beh Shiraz yek entekhaab-e behtar ast

"A trip to Shiraz is a better choice"

2. سفر به شیراز بهترین انتخاب است.
Safar beh Shiraz behtarin entekhaab ast
"A trip to Shiraz is the best choice"

This phrase is used when we want to advise or convince someone or ourselves of a choice that we know is better or even the best choice.

For example:

1. برای شام غذای ژاپنی یک انتخاب بهتر است.
baraay-e shaam ghazaay-e zhaaponi yek entekhaab-e behtar ast.
"Japanese food is a better choice for dinner."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Modals ("Must" / "Have to" / "Should")

باید بررسی ببینی شیرینه (شیرین است) یا ترشه (ترش است)?
baayad beporsi bebini shirine (shirin ast) yaa torshe (torsh ast)?
"You should ask to see if it's sweet or sour?"

In this lesson, we will learn how to use:

1. "Must," "have to," and "should" in Persian
 2. More honorific forms
-

1. "Must," "have to," and "should" in Persian

Baayad, باید, means "must," "should." For all persons, we can use the word *baayad*. We can also choose to start the sentence with *baayad* or place it right after the subject.

Majboor, مجبور, ("have to") always comes before an auxiliary verb.

Examples: مجبور شدن, *majboor shodan*, ("to have to"), مجبور کردن, *majboor kardan*, ("to make to," "to force")

The formula is: subject + majboor + auxiliary verb + object (if any) + main verb + personal ending.

Sentence samples:

1. من مجبور شدم به شیراز بروم.
man majboor shodam be shiraaz beravam.

"I had to go to Shiraz."

2. آنها من را مجبور کردند که حرف نزنم.
aan-haa man raa majoor kardand ke harf nazanam.
"They forced me not to speak."

Sentence Pattern and Conjugation chart

Baayad, ("must") is used for imperative sentences when something has to be done. The formula is subject + *baayad* + object + main verb + personal ending or *baayad* + main verb + personal ending. Usually, *baayad* is not combined with auxiliary verbs.

Let's look at the conjugation chart.

Persian (written/formal)	Romanization	English
باید بروم.	<i>baayad beravam</i>	I must go.
باید بروی.	<i>baayad beravi</i>	You must go.
باید برود.	<i>baayad beravad</i>	He (She) must go.
باید برویم.	<i>baayad beravim</i>	We must go.
باید بروید.	<i>baayad beravid</i>	You must go.
باید بروند.	<i>baayad beravand</i>	They must go.

Please take note of the differences between spoken and written/formal Persian.

Persian (spoken)	Romanization	English
باید برم.	<i>baayad beram</i>	I must go.
باید بری.	<i>baayad beri</i>	You must go.
باید بره.	<i>baayad bere</i>	He (She) must go.
باید بریم.	<i>baayad berim</i>	We must go.
(باید برید (برین).	<i>baayad berid (berin)</i>	You must go.
باید برن.	<i>baayad beran</i>	They must go.

Sample sentences:

Persian	Romanization	English
ما باید به دانشگاه برویم.	<i>maa baayad be daaneshgah beravim.</i>	"We must go to university."
شما باید غذا بخورید.	<i>shomaa baayad ghazaa bekhorid.</i>	"You must eat food."
آنها مجبور شدند به خانه برگردند.	<i>aanhaa majboor shodand be khaane bargardand.</i>	"They had to go back home."

2. More honorific forms

Honorific forms in Persian can be used with ordinary people or very important people. We have had castes in our culture throughout history. And, respect for people is reflected in the language. We are obliged to show our respect to teachers, clerks (religious leaders), parents, managers, politicians in power, and elderly people by our body language as well.

Please look at the charts and examples of honorific words and expressions below.

Plain form in Persian	Romanization	Honorific form in Persian	Romanization	English
باید بروید.	<i>baayad beravid .</i>	باید تشریف ببرید.	<i>baayad tashrif bebarid.</i>	You must go.
باید بیایند.	<i>baayad biaayand.</i>	باید تشریف بیاورند.	<i>baayad tashrif biaavarand.</i>	He (She) must come.
باید بخورد.	<i>baayad bekhorad.</i>	باید میل بفرمایند.	<i>baayad meyl befarmaayand.</i>	He (She) must eat.
باید بخورد.	<i>baayad bekhorad.</i>	باید صرف کند.	<i>baayad sarf konand.</i>	He (She) must eat.
باید بیایند	<i>baayad biaayand.</i>	باید تشریف فرما شوند.	<i>baayad tashrif farmaa shavand.</i>	He (She) must come.

Sample sentences

Plain form in Persian	Romanization	Honorific form in Persian	Romanization	English
آنها مجبور شدند به خانه بیایند.	<i>aanhaa majboor shodand be khaane biyaayand.</i>	آنها مجبور شدند به خانه تشریف بیاورند.	<i>aanhaa majboor shodand be khaane tashrif biyaavarand.</i>	They had to come home.
پادشاه شام خورد.	<i>paadeshaah shaam khord.</i>	پادشاه شام میل فرمودند.	<i>paadeshaah shaam meyl farmoodand.</i>	The king ate dinner.

Examples from the Dialogue

1. (پس باید سوپ عدس سفارش بدیم (بدهیم).
pas baayad soop-e adas sefaaresh bedim (bedahim).
"Then we must order lentil soup."
2. (این انتخاب بهتریه (بهتری است).
in entekhaab-e behtariye (behtari ast).
"That's a better choice."

Sample Sentences

1. من باید یک غذای خوشمزه بپزم.
man baayad yek ghazaa-ye khoshmaze bepazam.
"I have to cook a delicious meal."
2. شما مجبور هستید به خانه برگردید.
shomaa majboor hastid be khaane bargardid.

"You have to go home."

3. آنها باید برای شام به منزل ما تشریف بیاورند.

aanhaa baayad baraaye shaam be manzel-e maa tashrif biyaavarand.

"They should come to our home for dinner."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Iranian cuisine

Iranian cuisine is diverse, and each part of the country has its own unique ingredients and culinary style. However, Iranian dishes have been influenced by Iran's neighboring countries. Typical Iranian main dishes are combinations of rice with meat, such as lamb, beef, chicken, or fish, and vegetables. Fresh green herbs are often used along with fruits such as plums, quince, prunes, pomegranate, apricots, and raisins. There are 3 different ways of cooking rice; polo, kateh, and damy refer to these three different styles of cooking.

Useful expression

1. غذای خانگی.

ghazaa-ye khaanegi

"home-cooked food"

Home-cooked food is much different from what people eat in restaurants. Usually stews and soups are cooked in house, while kebabs, some breakfasts, and skewered meat and chicken are prepared mostly in restaurants.

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #13

Finding Your Way Around Iran

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#13

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. شیرین هدایت : سلام همیشه بی زحمت آدرس اون (آن) نمایشگاه نقاشی رو (را) بهم (به من) بدید (بدهید)؟
2. آقای احمدی : یک کم آدرسش پیچیده اس (است). باید براتون (برایتان) نقشه بکشم.
3. شیرین هدایت : ممنون میشم (می شوم).
4. آقای احمدی : با مترو میرید (میروید) درسته (درست است)؟
5. شیرین هدایت : بله!
6. آقای احمدی : ایستگاه اکباتان که پیاده شدید سواراتوبوس های فاز سه میشید (می شوید).
7. آقای احمدی : ایستگاه چهارم پیاده شید (شوید). روبروی ایستگاه یک سوپرمارکت هست (هست).
8. آقای احمدی : خیابون (خیابان) کنار سوپرمارکت را تا چهار راه برید (بروید).
9. آقای احمدی : بعد بیچید سمت چپ حدود صد متر جلوتر یک بانک هست.
10. آقای احمدی : نمایشگاه تو ساختمون (ساختمان) سبز کنار بانک است.
11. شیرین هدایت : طبقه چندم؟
12. آقای احمدی : طبقه سوم.

ROMANIZATION

1. Shirin Hedaayat : salaam mishe bizahmat aadress-e oon (aan) namaayeshgaah-e naghaash-i ro (raa) behem (be man) bedid (bedahid)?
2. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : yek kam aadresesh pichide as (ast). baayad baraatoon (baraayetaan) naghshe bekesham.
3. Shirin Hedaayat : mamnoon misham (mishavam).
4. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : baa metro mirid (miravid), doroste (dorost ast)?
5. Shirin Hedaayat : bale!
6. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : istgaah-e ekbaataan ke piyaade shodid savaar-e ootooboos-haa-ye faaz-e se mishid (mishavid).
7. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : istgaah-e chaahaarrom piyaade shid (shavid). rooberoo-ye istgaah yek sooper market hast.
8. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : khiaaboon-e (khiaabaan-e) kenaar-e sooper market raa taa chahaar raah berid (beravid).
9. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : b'ad bepichid samt-e chap hodood-e sad metr jolotar yek baank hast.
10. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : namaayeshgaah too saakhtemoon-e (saakhtemaan-e) sabz-e kenaar-e baank ast.
11. Shirin Hedaayat : tabaghe-ye chandom?
12. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : tabaghe-ye sevvom.

ENGLISH

1. Shirin Hedayat : Hello Mr. Ahmadi, could you please give me the directions to that painting exhibition?
2. Mr. Ahmadi : It's in a bit of a tricky location! I've got to draw a map for you!
3. Shirin Hedayat : I'd be grateful.
4. Mr. Ahmadi : You're taking the subway, right?
5. Shirin Hedayat : Yes.
6. Mr. Ahmadi : Get off at Ekbatan Station and then take the bus for Phase (Fāz) Three.
7. Mr. Ahmadi : Get off the bus at the fourth stop. There's a supermarket in front of the stop!
8. Mr. Ahmadi : Walk down the street next to the supermarket up to a crossroads.
9. Mr. Ahmadi : Then turn left. About 100 meters ahead, there's a bank.
10. Mr. Ahmadi : The exhibition is in the green building next to the bank.
11. Shirin Hedayat : Which floor?
12. Mr. Ahmadi : Third floor.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
ایستگاه	istgaah	station	noun
آدرس دادن	aadres daadan	to give directions (or address)	verb
ممنون میشم (میشوم)	mamnoon misham(mishavam)	I'd be grateful	sentence
جلوتر	jolotar	ahead	adverb
سوار شدن	savaar shodan	to get on	verb
پایه شدن	piyaade shodan	to get off	verb
نمایشگاه	namaayeshgaah	exhibition	noun
پیچیدن	pichidan	to turn	verb
روبروی	rooberooye	in front of	adverb
بی زحمت	bi zahmat	please	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>ایستگاه خیلی شلوغ بود. <i>istgaah kheili sholoogh bood.</i> The station was very crowded.</p>	<p>لطفاً آدرس فروشگاه را به من بدهید. <i>lotfan aadres-e forooshgaah raa be man bedahid.</i> Please give me the store's address.</p>
<p>ممنون میشم اگر باز هم تشریف بیارید. <i>mamnoon misham agar baaz ham tashrif biyaarid.</i> I'd be grateful if you came again.</p>	<p>من جلوتر از همه به خانه رسیدم. <i>man jolotar az hame be khaane residam.</i> I got home ahead of everyone else.</p>
<p>سوار شدن بر اسب آسان نیست. <i>savaar shodan bar asb aasaan nist.</i> Getting on a horse is not easy.</p>	<p>جلوی خانه از ماشین دوستم پیاده شدم. <i>jolo-ye khaane az maashin-e doostam piyaade shodam.</i> I got out of my friend's car in front of the house.</p>
<p>من به نمایشگاه رفتم. <i>man be namaayeshgaah raftam.</i> I went to the exhibition.</p>	<p>نمایشگاه‌های جالب بسیار زیادی وجود دارد؛ دیدن همه آنها غیر ممکن است. <i>namaayeshgaah-haa-ye jaaleb-e besiaar ziaadi vojood daasad; didan-e hame-ye aanhaa gheir-e momken ast.</i> There are so many interesting exhibitions; it's impossible to see them all.</p>
<p>او نمایشگاهی از آثار هنرمندان مختلف برپا کرد. <i>oo namaayeshgaahi az aasaare honarmandaane mokhtalef barpaa kard.</i> He set up an exhibition of works by various artists.</p>	<p>بپیچ سمت چپ. <i>bepich samt-e chap.</i> Turn left.</p>
<p>اگر اینجا به طرف چپ بپیچی به بن‌بست می‌رسی. <i>agar injaa be taraf-e chap bepichi be bonbast miresi.</i> If you turn left here, you will come to a dead end.</p>	<p>روبروی دانشگاه منتظر من باش. <i>rooberoo-ye daaneshgaah montazer-e man baash.</i> Wait for me in front of the university.</p>
<p>روبروی اطلاعات گردشگری همدیگر رو ببینیم. <i>rooberooye ettelaa'at-e gardeshgari hamdigar ro bebinim.</i> Let's meet in front of the tourist information.</p>	<p>بی زحمت یک لیوان آب به من بدهید. <i>bi zahmat yek livaan aab be man bedahid.</i> Please give me a glass of water.</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

بی زحمت
bi zahmat
"Please"

This phrase is the most polite way to request something of someone.

Bi, بی, ("without") + *zahmat*, زحمت, ("trouble") implies that the person who is asking for a favor doesn't want to trouble the other person. So by saying this phrase, you literally mean "if it won't trouble you."

For example:

1. بی زحمت یک لیوان آب به من بدهید.
bi zahmat yek livaan aab beh man bedahid.
"Please give me a glass of water."

پیاده شدن

piyaadeh shodan

"to get off, to get down"

Let's break this phrase down: ***Piyaadeh***, پیاده, meaning "walker" or literally "the one who does not ride" + ***shodan***, شدن, meaning "become." We use ***piyaadeh shodan***, "to get off," when disembarking from ferries, ships, boats, air balloons, and even spaceships, if that is the case.

Piyaadeh shodan as a slang means "it costs (me, he/she, they,...) a lot." For example: با یک کلاهبرداری بزرگ (با یک کلاهبرداری بزرگ) او را پیاده کردند. (*baa yek kolaah bardaari-ye bozorg ou ra piyadeh kardand*), meaning "With a grand heist, they made him lose a lot (of money)." Note: the word meaning "money" is not explicitly expressed but is implicit in the meaning of the sentence.

For example:

1. در ایستگاه آخر پیاده می شوم.
daa istgaah-e aakhar piyaadeh mishavam.
"I get off at the last station."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Word Order in the Sentence

سلام همیشه بی زحمت آدرس اون (آن) نمایشگاه نقاشی رو (را) بهم (به من) بدید (بدهید)?
salaam mishe bizahmat aadress-e oon (aan) namaayeshgaah-e naghhaashi ro (raa) behem (be man) bedid (bedahid)?

"Hello Mrs. Milani, could you please give me the directions to that painting exhibition?"

In this lesson, we will learn about:

1. Word order in written and spoken Persian
2. Position of time and place adverbs
3. Omitting certain words, for example به, *be*, "to"

1. Word order in written and spoken Persian

What is the word order in written Persian?

As far as word order is concerned, the Persian language is more flexible in its word order than English language. It is relatively free. Some of these orders are more marked than other orders, but all of them can be permissible. There are at least 26 word orders in Persian, but we really need to learn just one or two.

Subject-Object-Verb, or SOV, is the most correct word order in Persian.

The below examples are the most correct word orders in the Persian language.

Persian	Romanization	English
من همیشه تو را دوست داشتم.	<i>man hamishe to raa doost daashtam.</i>	"I have always loved you."

Though SOV is the most correct word order in Persian, you can read or hear other word orders such as, subject-verb-object or SVO.

Note: Sometimes both subject and personal ending are used in one sentence, and sometimes subject is omitted. It is optional and sometimes up to the speaker.

Here is a chart which compares SOV and SVO.

SOV written/formal word order	Romanization	SVO spoken/informal (with some modifications native speaker make)	Romanization	English
من به خانه رفتم.	<i>man be khaane raftam.</i>	رفتم خونه.	<i>raftam khoone.</i>	"I went home."
آنها به کلاس رفتند.	<i>aanhaa be kelaas raftand.</i>	رفتن کلاس.	<i>raftan kelaas.</i>	"They went to the class."
ما از شرکت رفتیم.	<i>maa az sherkat raftim.</i>	رفتیم از شرکت.	<i>raftim az sherkat.</i>	"We left the company."
شما ناهار خوردید؟	<i>shomaa naahaar khordid?</i>	ناهار خوردین؟	<i>naahaar khordin?</i>	"Did you eat lunch?"

How about spoken Persian?

Word order does not change in spoken Persian. As we mentioned before, spoken Persian is just a shorter version of the written form, and the integrity of the structure of sentences stays intact.

2. Position of time and place adverbs

When we add time or place adverbs in the sentence, the best word order is as follows:

subject - **adverb of time** - object - **adverb of place** - verb

There are other word orders, like subject + object + place + verb + time, or even a different word order, but the best word order and the most correct is subject + time + object + place + verb. Just remember that you may read or hear a different word order. As we mentioned before, the Persian language is very relaxed when it comes to word order.

So, where are they positioned in a sentence? Time adverbs come right after the subject, and place adverbs can come after the object.

In many cases, objects and places are the same, like خانه, khaane, meaning "home," in the following example:

1. من ساعت پنج صبح به خانه رسیدم.
man saa'at-e panj-e sobh be khaane residam.
"I got home at 5:00 am."

Sample sentences

Persian	Romanization	English
من دیروز از دانشگاه تا خانه پیاده رفتم.	<i>man dirooz az daaneshgaah taa khaane piyaade raftam.</i>	"Yesterday I walked home from university."
ما سال آینده به فرانسه سفر می کنیم.	<i>maa saal-e aayande be faraanse safar mikonim.</i>	"We will travel to France next year."

3. Omitting certain words, for example به, be, "to"

In Persian, when we want to put emphasis on the sentence we might use the subject. Just like English, you can bring the time/place adverbs to the beginning of the sentence. For example, you can say either:

1. *dirooz raftam sinemaa.*
"(I) went to cinema yesterday." {SVO}
or
2. *man dirooz be sinemaa raftam.*
"I went to the cinema yesterday." {SOV}

On the first sentence, we have omitted من, man, meaning "I," and the preposition به, be, meaning "to."

Note: Sometimes when we omit به, be, "to," we can change the word order from SOV to SVO or just keep it as SOV. (Please see the examples in the chart below for both word orders.)

There are times when we can not omit به, be, "to." Here are some examples:

1. از انگلیسی به فارسی ترجمه کردن.
az engelisi be faarsi tarjome kardan.
"To translate from English to Persian."
2. به خواهرم کمک کردم.
be khaaharam komak kardam.

"I helped my sister."

3. به تو فکر میکنم.
be to fekr mikonam.
"I'm thinking of you."

4. به من نگاه کرد.
be man negaah kard.
"She looked at me."

When به, be, "to," is between two adjectives, two pronouns, or two nouns, it can not be omitted, even if one of the pronouns is the subject and has been omitted, like examples no. 3 and 4.

But when the word order is SVO, به, be, "to," can be omitted, like in the examples we already saw:

1. دیروز رفتم سینما.
dirooz raftam sinemaa.
"I went to the cinema yesterday." {SVO}
Instead of

2. دیروز به سینما رفتم.
dirooz be sinemaa raftam.
"I went to the cinema yesterday." {SOV}

You can also keep or omit the pronouns. When emphasizing the subject pronouns or subject proper nouns, you might keep it in the sentence. Let's see some examples:

Persian (extended form)	Romanization	Persian (shortened form/informal spoken)	Romanization	English
من به خانه رفتم.	<i>man be khaane raftam.</i>	من رفتم خونه.	<i>(man) raftam khoone.</i>	I went to home/I went home
ما به کجا می رویم.	<i>maa be kojaa miravim?</i>	ما کجا می ریم.	<i>(maa) kojaa mirim?</i>	Where we are going?
آنها به پارک می روند.	<i>aanhaa be paark miravand.</i>	اونها می رن پارک.	<i>(oonaa) miran paark.</i>	They go to the park.
شما به دانشگاه رفتید؟	<i>shomaa be daaneshgaah raftid?</i>	شما دانشگاه رفتید؟	<i>shomaa daaneshgaah raftid?</i>	Did you go to university?
او به کلاس رفت.	<i>oo be kelaas raft.</i>	اون رفت کلاس.	<i>oon raft kelaas.</i>	He went to the class.

Examples from the Dialogue

1. یک کم آدرسش پیچیده اس (است). باید براتون (برایتان) نقشه بکشم.
yek kam aadresesh pichide as (ast). baayad baraatoon (baraayetaan) nagshe bekesham.
"It's in a bit of a tricky location! I've got to draw a map for you!"

2. (ممنون میشم می شوم).
mamnoon misham (mishavam).
"I'd be grateful"

Sample Sentences

-
1. من به نمایشگاه رفتم.
man be namaayeshgaah raftam.
"I went to the exhibition."
 2. ایستگاه خیلی شلوغ بود.
istgaah kheyli sholoogh bood.
"The station was very crowded."
 3. روبروی دانشگاه منتظر من باش.
rooberoo-ye daaneshgaah montazer-e man baash.
"Wait for me in front of the university."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Formality in language and behavior

Written Persian is considered formal, that's why it is strange if close friends or family members use the written forms in their conversations. In general, words are broken to a shorter version, and some sounds like aa change to oo. For example: می دانم (midaanam), "I know," changes to می دونم (midoonam), or a full verb like است (ast), "is," is reduced to a single sound ه (e).

For example: خوب است (khoob ast), "It is good," changes to خوبه (khoobe).

The letter "d" in all verbs that end in "d" will be replaced by "e." For example: می خورد (mikhorad), "he/she eats," changes to می خوره (mikhore). Some words can get more than one change in it. For example: می داند (midaanad), "he/she knows," changes to می دونه (midoone).

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #14

Everyday Family Dramas in Iran

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#14

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. خانم میلانی : سیما جان چقدر بگم (بگویم) جورابات رو (جوراب‌هایت را) زیر تخت ننداز (بنداز).
2. سیما : ماما من چقدر بگم (بگویم) برام (برایم) یه (یک) سبب بگیر.
3. خانم میلانی : رفتیم خرید یادم بیار(بیاور).
4. سیما : چشم.
5. خانم میلانی : این کتابا (کتاب‌ها) رو از روی زمین جمع کن.
6. سیما : هنوز کارم تموم نشده (نشده است).
7. خانم میلانی : جمشید، خواهش می‌کنم دیگه (دیگر) تو اتاق سیگار نکش.
8. جمشید : من همیشه میرم تو بالکن.
9. خانم میلانی : فقط یادت باشه در بالکن رو (را) خوب ببند.
10. جمشید : چشم خواهر جان.

ROMANIZATION

1. Khanom-e Milaani : simaa jaan cheqadr begam (begooyam) jooraabaat ro (jooraab-haa-yat raa) zir-e takht nandaaz (nayandaaz).
2. Simaa : maamaan man cheqadr begam (begooyam) baraam (baraayam) ye (yek) sabad begir.
3. Khanom-e Milaani : raftim kharid yaadam biaar(biaavar).
4. Simaa : chashm.
5. Khanom-e Milaani : in ketaabaa (ketaab-haa) ro az roo-ye zamin jam kon.
6. Simaa : hanooz kaaram tamoom nashode (nashode ast).
7. Khanom-e Milaani : jamshid, khaahesh mikonam dige (digar) too otaaqa sigaar nakesh.
8. Jamshid : man hamishe miram too baalkon.
9. Khanom-e Milaani : faqat yaadet baashe dar-e baalkon ro (raa) khoob beband.
10. Jamshid : chashm khaahar jaan.

ENGLISH

1. Mrs. Milani : Sima, honey, how many times should I tell you not to throw your socks under the bed?
2. Sima : Mom, how many times should I tell you to buy me a basket?
3. Mrs. Milani : If we go shopping, remind me.
4. Sima : Sure.
5. Mrs. Milani : Pick up these books off the floor.
6. Sima : I'm not done yet.
7. Mrs. Milani : Jamshid, please don't smoke in the room anymore.
8. Jamshid : I always go to the balcony.
9. Mrs. Milani : Just remember to shut the door to the balcony.
10. Jamshid : Sure, dear sister!

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
سبد	sabad	basket	noun
زمین	zamin	floor (ground)	noun
دیگر	digar	anymore	adverb
چشم	chashm	sure	adverb
در را خوب بستن	dar raa khoob bastan	to shut the door	verb phrase
بالکن	baalkon	balcony	noun
کارم تموم نشده	kaaram tamaam nashode	I'm not done	phrase
از روی زمین جمع کردن	az rooy-e zamin jam' kardan	to pick up (something) off the floor (or ground).	verb phrase
سیگار کشیدن	sigaar keshidan	to smoke	verb
خواهش می‌کنم	khaahesh mikonam	please	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>سیب زمینیا رو (زمینی ها را) بریز تو سید!</p> <p><i>sib zamini-yaa ro (zamini-haa raa) beriz too sabad!</i></p> <p>Put the potatoes in the basket!</p>	<p>هر مطب دندان پزشکی باید حداقل به سید مجله برای اتاق انتظار داشته باشه.</p> <p><i>har matab-e dandoon-pezesheki baayad hadde-aqal ye sabad majlle baraaye otaaq-e entezaar daashte baashe.</i></p> <p>Every dentist office has to have at least one basket with magazines in the waiting room.</p>
<p>نشین رو (روی) زمین!</p> <p><i>nashin roo (rooy-e) zamin!</i></p> <p>Don't sit on the floor!</p>	<p>دیگه (دیگر) نمیتونم (نمیتوانم) تحملش کنم!</p> <p><i>dige (digar) nemitoonam (nemitavaanam) tahammolesh konam!</i></p> <p>I can't put up with him (her/it) anymore!</p>
<p>چشم عزیزم!</p> <p><i>chashm azizam!</i></p> <p>Sure, dear!</p>	<p>درو (در را) خوب ببند! سردمه (سردم است)!</p> <p><i>dar-o (dar raa) khoob beband! sardame (sardam ast)!</i></p> <p>Shut the door! I've got a chill!</p>
<p>لباسهای کثیف از بالکن به پایین افتادند.</p> <p><i>lebaashaye shoste shode az baalkon oftaad paaeen.</i></p> <p>The laundry fell off the balcony.</p>	<p>آپارتمان یک بالکن کوچک دارد.</p> <p><i>aapaartemaan yek baalkon-e koochak daaraad.</i></p> <p>The apartment has a small balcony.</p>
<p>صندلی و میز در بالکن</p> <p><i>sandali va miz dar baalkon</i></p> <p>chair and table on the balcony</p>	<p>امروز بالکنو (بالکن را) میشورم!</p> <p><i>emrooz baalkon ro (baalkon raa) mishooram!</i></p> <p>Today I'm going to wash the floor of the balcony!</p>
<p>کارم با لپ تاپ تموم نشده (نشده است)!</p> <p><i>kaaram baa laptap tamoom nashode (nashode ast)!</i></p> <p>I'm not done with the laptop!</p>	<p>این خورده نونارو (خورده نان ها را) از رو زمین جمع کن!</p> <p><i>in khorde noon-aa ro (khorde naan-haa raa) az roo (roo-ye) zamin jam' kon!</i></p> <p>Pick up these breadcrumbs off the floor!</p>
<p>باید سیگار کشیدنو (کشیدن را) ترک کنی!</p> <p><i>baayad sigaar keshidan-o (keshidan raa) tark koni!</i></p> <p>You have to quit smoking!</p>	<p>خواهش میکنم سکوت کن!</p> <p><i>khaahesh mikonam sokoot kon!</i></p> <p>I beg you to be silent!</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

خواهش می‌کنم

khaahesh mikonam

"please, I beg, your welcome"

Khaahesh, خواهش, ("request"/ "begging") + **mikonam**, می‌کنم, ("I do"), which simply means "please."

In a more serious request, you can translate it to "I beg" - for example, خواهش میکنم ترکم نکن, **khaahesh mikonam tarkam nakon!**, which means "I beg you not to leave (abandon) me!"

Whenever you have a favor and want to ask for it politely, you'd better use this phrase at the beginning of your sentence. Another equivalent, which is an adverb and an Arabic word, which is commonly used in Iran is *لطفاً* (*lotfan*), "please." You might see people spell it *لطفن* too. Depending on the context, it might mean "You're welcome!" In this case, you literally mean "I beg you not to mention it."

You might hear people say ***khaaheshan*** as a way to mimic and rhyme with the Arabic word *lotfan*, but it's not correct grammatically. It's a common mistake.

For example:

1. *خواهش میکنم بمون (بمان)!*
khaاهش mikonam bemoon (bemaan)!
"I beg you stay!"

چشم
chashm
"sure"

Chashm, **چشم** means "eye" in English. This phrase is originally **به روی چشم** ***Beh***, **به**, ("to", "towards") + **روی**, ***rooy-e***, ("on", "upon"), **چشم**. ***chashm***, ("eye")

Chashm is used as a token of respect and politeness. It's formal but also can be used in slightly formal situations. You can use the original and long version if you wish. So by saying this you're putting the asker's request "upon your eyes." You imply that you care about the asker and respect them. Eyes are considered very important organs in body. They are also located high on the body.

Ghadam-s kasi rooy-r cheshm-e kasi (digar) boodan, **دیگر) کسی روی چشم کسی (دیگر) بودن** is another honorific verb phrase meaning "they are welcome (to a house)." *Ghadam*, **قدم**, means "step," "foot." You can say this phrase to your guest, as in **چشم روی قدمتون** (*ghadametoon rooy-e cheshm*), meaning "you're welcome (to a house)." By saying this, you put your guest in the highest place you acknowledge. This way you're respecting and welcoming your guests.

For example:

1. **چشم مادرم!**
chashm maadaram!
"Sure, my mother!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Preposition (or in Persian, ***harf-e Ezaafeh***) construction

(سایما جان چقدر بگم (بگویم) جورابات رو (جورابهایت را) زیر تخت ننداز (نینداز).
simaa jaan cheqadr begam (begooyam) jooraabaat ro (jooraab-haa-yat raa) zir-e takht nandaaz (nayandaaz).

"Sima, honey, how many times should I tell you not to throw your socks under the bed?"

In this lesson, we will learn about:

1. The position of the prepositions in Persian

2. The ezaafe with different word endings

3. Words ending with the the letter (ه)

1. The position of the prepositions in Persian

In Persian, prepositions precede the indirect object of the sentence, while the direct object is always followed by را, *raa*. Some of the prepositions take the ezaafe construction, such as برای (*baraaye*), "for," "to," "in order to," روی (*roo-ye*), "on," "over," "upon," زیر (*zir-e*), "under," "beneath," and بالای (*baalaa-ye*), "on," "over."

Ezaafe construction is used to connect words primarily in three situations:

1- Possession: to connect the possessed noun with its owner:

- خواهر مریم
khaahar-e maryam
"Maryam's sister"

2- Adjective-noun: to modify nouns:

- کتاب خوب
ketaab-e khoob
"good book"

3- Names: to connect people and titles and places, days, and seasons and their names:

- آقای یاسری
aaqaa-ye yaaseri
"Mr. Yaseri"

The two words are connected using a short -e sound. It is generally not indicated in writing in the Persian script.

Here is a list of highly used prepositions in Persian:

Persian	Romanization	English
از	<i>az</i>	"from," "since," "of"
با	<i>baa</i>	"with"
به	<i>be</i>	"to"
در (توی) - colloquial	<i>dar (tooy-e)</i>	"in," "into," "at," "inside"
برای	<i>baraay-e</i>	"for"
روی (رو) - colloquial	<i>rooy-e (roo)</i>	"on," "over," "on top of"
زیر	<i>zir-e</i>	"under," "underneath"
بالای	<i>baalaay-e</i>	"over," "on top of," "above"

Sample sentences

1. (از شرکت اومد خونه) خانه.
az sherkat oomad khoone.
"He/she came home from work."
2. با مادرم به فروشگاه رفتم.
baa maadaram be forooshgaah raftim.
"I went to the shop with my mother."
3. برای سیمین یه (یک) ماگ خریدم.
baraaye simin ye (yek) maag kharidam.
"I bought a mug for Simin."

2. The ezaafe with different word endings

When a word ends in a consonant, the ezaafe is pronounced but not written. When **ezaafe** is added to a word that ends in a vowel, the short -e sound becomes a -ye sound. In such cases, the ezaafe is always pronounced and usually written. Here are two examples:

1. دانشجوی سال دوم
daaneshjoo-ye saal-e dovvom
"sophomore"
2. جای پارک
jaa-ye paark
"Parking spot"

Persian	Romanization	English
دانشجوی سال اول	<i>daaneshjoo-ye saal-e av-val</i>	freshman
جای خوب	<i>jaa-ye khoob</i>	good place
پای چپ	<i>paa-ye chap</i>	left foot

3. Words ending with the letter (ه)

If a word ends in the short vowel designated by the letter he do-cheshm (ه), then **ezaafe** may be marked in two ways.

In the past, a **hamze** was added on top of the final *heh*, but you can omit it. Here is an example that shows how to use it:

1. هفته بعد
hafte-ye ba'd
"next week"

Although recently, at school, a new orthography is being taught. The letter ی (ye) in place of the **hamze**. But in informal writing, you can leave it out. It does not change the meaning of the phrase.

In the following sample sentences, you can see the hamze, but remember that most of the people omit it when writing or typing, even in official correspondences.

1. نامه ی بلندی نوشت.
naame-ye bolandi nevesht.

"He/she wrote a long letter."

- خانه مادربزرگم را بسیار دوست داشتم.
khaane-ye maadar bozorgam raa besyaar doost daashtam.
"I liked my grandmother's house very much."

Examples from the Dialogue

- این کتابا (کتاب ها) را از روی زمین جمع کن.
in ketaabaa (ketaab-haa raa) az roo-ye zamin jam' kon.
"Pick up these books off the floor."
- فقط یادت باشه در بالکن رو (را) خوب ببند.
faqat yaadet baashe dar-e baalkon ro (raa) khoob beband.
"Just remember to shut the door to the balcony up."

Sample Sentences

- جورابم زیر میزه (میز است).
jooraabam zir-e mize (miz ast).
"My sock is under the table."
- جلوی در منتظر باش.
joloo-ye dar montazer baash.
"Wait at the door."
- داخل کیفت رو (را) نگاه کن.
daakhel-e kifet ro (raa) negaah kon.
"Look into your bag."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Extended and nuclear families

In the past, maybe around 50 to 70 years ago, grandparents, uncles, aunts, and cousins lived in big houses with a yard. It had its own merits and demerits. But today, especially in the major cities like Tehran, Isfahan, Shiraz, Mashhad, and Tabriz, you hardly see such a lifestyle. Many of these big houses were destroyed and replaced with five-story or more apartments. We call these "matchboxes." It's quite common that single boys and girls live with their parents till they get married. Especially single ladies, even when they go to work and are sort of financially independent, spend their singlehood with their parents and siblings.

Useful expression

- پدرسالاری
pedar saalaari
"Patriarchy"

Iran, like many other countries in Asia, has a patriarchal culture. It gives male figures in families somehow unlimited authority and control over females. In the past, it was felt and experienced much more due to the fact that families were extended families, and the oldest man in the household would act as the ruler of that small society. In recent years, thanks to women's higher education and their relative financial independence, this culture tends to dissolve. However, Islamic rules and regulations are still in favor of men.

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #15

Are You a Good Persian Note-Taker?

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#15

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. جمشید : همیشه (می شود) دفتر فیزیکت رو (را) بهم (به من) قرض بدی (بدهی)؟
2. هدی : تا کی لازمش داری؟
3. جمشید : تا فردا بعد از ظهر. فقط میخوام (می خواهم) ازش (از آن) کپی بگیرم.
4. هدی : میتونی (می توانی) شنبه بیاریش (بیاوریش) ؟ من فردا نمیام (نمی آیم).
5. جمشید : باشه.
6. هدی : یادت نره (نرود) شنبه بیاریش (بیاوریش) مریم (مریم هم) میخواد (می خواهد) کپی بگیره (بگیرد).
7. جمشید : میخوای (می خواهی) دو سری کپی بگیرم؟
8. هدی : چه خوب دستت درد نکنه (نکند).

ROMANIZATION

1. Jamshid : mishe (mishavad) daftar-e fiziket ro (raa) behem (be man) qarz bedi (bedahi)?
2. Hodaa : taa key laazemesh daari?
3. Jamshid : taa fardaa ba'd az zohr. faqat mikhaam (mikhaaham) azash (az aan) kopi begiram.
4. Hodaa : mitooni (mitavaani) shanbe biyaarish (biyaavarish)? man fardaa nemiyaam (nemiaayam).
5. Jamshid : baashe.
6. Hodaa : yaadet nare (naravad) shanbe biyaarish (biyaavarish) maryamam (maryam ham) mikhaad (mikhaahad) kopi begire (begirad).
7. Jamshid : mikhaay (mikhaahi) do seri kopi begiram?
8. Hodaa : che khoob dastet dard nakone (nakonad).

ENGLISH

1. Jamshid : Can you lend me your physics notebook?
2. Hoda : Until when do you need it?
3. Jamshid : Until tomorrow afternoon. I just want to make a copy of it.
4. Hoda : Can you bring it on Saturday? I don't come tomorrow.
5. Jamshid : Ok.
6. Hoda : Don't forget to bring it Saturday! Maryam wants to make a copy too.
7. Jamshid : Do you want me to make two copies?
8. Hoda : How nice. Thanks.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
لازم داشتن	laazem daashtan	to need	verb
بعد از ظهر	ba'd az zohr	afternoon	noun
دستت درد نکنه (نکنند).	dastet dard nakone	thanks	verb phrase
سری	seri	series (as numerator for copies)	noun
آوردن	aavardan	to bring	verb
خواستن	khaastan	to want	verb
دفتر	daftar	notebook	noun
فردا	fardaa	tomorrow	noun
کپی گرفتن	kopi gereftan	to make a copy	verb
شنبه	shanbe	Saturday	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>من به (یک) قابلمه لازم دارم.</p> <p><i>man ye (yek) qaablame laazem daaram.</i></p> <p>I need a pot.</p>	<p>امروز بعد از ظهر بهت زنگ میزنم.</p> <p><i>emrooz ba'd az zohr behet zang mizanam.</i></p> <p>I'll call you this afternoon.</p>
<p>امروز بعد از ظهر بهت زنگ میزنم.</p> <p><i>emrooz ba'd az zohr behet zang mizanam.</i></p> <p>I'll call you back this afternoon.</p>	<p>دستتون درد نکنه!</p> <p><i>dastetoon dard nakoneh.</i></p> <p>Thank you.</p>

<p>این مغازه به (یک) سری لباس زمستونی (زمستانی) جدی آورده (آورده است).</p> <p><i>in maghaaze ye (yek) seri lebaas-e zemestooni-ye (zemestaani-ye) jadid avorde (avarde ast).</i></p> <p>This store has brought some new winter clothes.</p>	<p>شوهرش کیک رو (کیک را) آورد.</p> <p><i>shoharash keyk ro (keyk raa) aavord.</i></p> <p>Her husband brought the cake.</p>
<p>این کتاب رو هم بیار.</p> <p><i>in ketaab ro ham biyaar.</i></p> <p>Bring this book too.</p>	<p>اگر هر چه زودتر اسناد را برای من نیاوری، اخراجی.</p> <p><i>agar har che zoodtar asnaad raa baraaye man nayaavari, ekhraaji.</i></p> <p>If you don't bring me the documents as soon as possible, you're fired.</p>
<p>از ما خواسته شده تا برای خودمان نوشیدنی به مهمانی بیاوریم.</p> <p><i>az maa khaaste shode taa baraaye khodemaan nooshidani be mehmaani biaavarim.</i></p> <p>We were asked to bring our own drinks to the party.</p>	<p>میخوام (میخواهم) برم (بروم) باشگا (باشگاه).</p> <p><i>mikhaam (mikhaaham) beram (beravam) baashgaa (baashgaah).</i></p> <p>I want to to go to the gym.</p>
<p>من برای هر کلاس یک دفتر جداگانه دارم.</p> <p><i>Man baraaye har kelaas yek daftar-e jodaagaane daaram.</i></p> <p>I have a separate notebook for each class.</p>	<p>دفترچه خط دار</p> <p><i>Daftarcheye khat daar</i></p> <p>white lined notebook</p>
<p>دفترت کجاس (کجا است)؟</p> <p><i>daftaret kojaas (kojaa ast)?</i></p> <p>Where's your notebook?</p>	<p>چند تا دفتر لازم دارید؟</p> <p><i>chand taa daftar laazem daarid?</i></p> <p>How many notebooks do you need?</p>
<p>فردا تعطیل است.</p> <p><i>fardaa ta'til ast.</i></p> <p>Tomorrow is a holiday.</p>	<p>از شناسنامه اش به (یک) کپی بگیر.</p> <p><i>az shenaasnaame-ash ye (yek) kopi begir.</i></p> <p>Make a copy of her/his birth certificate.</p>
<p>از شنبه شروع میکنم!</p> <p><i>az shanbe shoroo' mikonam.</i></p> <p>I'll start from Saturday!</p>	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

(دستت درد نکنه) نکند
dastet dard nakoneh
 "thanks"

Dast, "hand," + *e* (it indicates something belongs to someone. Here "hand" belongs to you, so *dastet menas*, "your hand") + *ت* (*t*), "you," which is the short form of *تو* (*to*), "you," + *درد* (*dard*), "pain," + *نکنه* (*nakoneh*), "doesn't," "don't," "without." *دستت درد نکنه* (***dastet dard nakoneh***) is literally "your hand without pain," which also means, "I hope your hand is without pain." This is another way of saying "thanks," so you can use *dastet dard nakoneh* when someone cooks for you or does a physical task for you. You wish them a hand without pain, or "thanks." Iranian language has many phrases like this, that you might have to know Persian culture in order to understand them.

You use this in informal settings. It's somehow more sincere than a simple *ممنونم* (***mamnonam***), another word that means "thanks." In a slightly formal situation, such as thanking a person who is older than you but who you are close to and with whom you have an intimate relationship, you can use the personal ending for the second person plural. *دستتون درد نکنه* (*daste *toon* dard nakoeh*) can be translated to "thank you."

For example:

1. (دستتون درد نکنه برای گلابی ها)
dastetoon dard nakoneh baraay-e golaabi-yaa (golaabi haa)
"Thank you for the pears!"

شنبه

shanbeh

"Saturday"

Weekdays in Persian, except for the Friday, have the word *شنبه* (***shanbeh***) in them. ***Shanbeh*** is "Saturday" and is the first day of the work and school week in Iran. For the rest of the weekdays, we add a number at the beginning. *Yek* ("one") + *shanbeh* makes *یکشنبه* (*Yekshanbeh*), which is "Sunday." *دوشنبه*, *چهارشنبه*, *سه شنبه*, and *پنجشنبه* are read as *do* ("two")+*shanbeh*, *seh* ("three")+*shanbeh*, *chahaar* ("four")+*shanbeh*, and *panj* ("five")+*sanbeh*. Friday is an exception to this pattern and is *jom'e*.

You are now fully aware of the fact that we drop vowels/letters or change them to another vowel/letter when we speak. *چهارشنبه* (***chaahaarshanbeh***), "Wednesday," is the spoken form of *chahaarshanbeh*. We also drop the *ج* in *پنج شنبه* (***panjshanbeh***), "Thursday." So it will be pronounced *panshanbeh*.

شنبه (***shanbeh***) "Saturday" is the first day of the week. You might hear procrastinators say *از شنبه* (*as shanbeh...*), "from Saturday."

For example:

1. (شنبه مدرسه باز میشه می شود)
shanbeh madresh baaz misheh (mishavad)
"School opens Saturday!"

کپی گرفتن

kopi gereftan

"to make a copy"

This verb phrase is made up of two parts: *copi* ("copy"), which is a loanword from the English language, and *gerftan* ("to take or to catch").

You might find some originally Persian equivalents for such combinations of a loanword and a Persian word, but in fact they are not common. As in this case: ***roo gereft*** or ***roo nevesht*** is the equivalent for "copy," but you might just see them in formal correspondence.

For example:

1. از این صفحه به (یک) کپی می گیرم.
az in safhe yeh (yek) kopi migiram.
"I'll make a copy of this page."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Possessive and Objective Endings

میشه (می شود) دفتر فیزیکت رو (را) بهم (به من) فرض بدی (بدهی)?
mishe (mishavad) daftar-e fiziket ro (raa) behem (be man) qarz bedi (bedahi)?
"Can you lend me your physics notebook?"

In this lesson, we will learn:

1. Possessive suffixes
2. Difference between written and spoken forms
3. Words ending in *-aa* or *-oo*

1. Possessive suffixes

Possession is often expressed by adding suffixes to nouns. The same suffixes are used as object pronouns. With verbs, these endings are used in objective case, and with nouns, they are used to construct possessive case.

Possessive determiners are listed in the table below.

Written form:

Persian	Romanization	English
م	<i>am</i>	my
ت	<i>at</i>	your (second person singular)
ش	<i>ash</i>	his/her/its
مان	<i>emaan</i>	our
تان	<i>etaan</i>	your (second person plural)
شان	<i>eshaan</i>	their

Spoken form:

Persian	Romanization	English
م	<i>am</i>	my
ت	<i>et</i>	your (second person singular)
ش	<i>esh</i>	his/her/its
مان	<i>emoonn</i>	our
تان	<i>etoon</i>	your (second person plural)
شان	<i>eshoon</i>	their

Sample sentences

1. بردمش.
bordamesh.
 "I took it."

Here you can see the possessive determiner *esh* used in the objective case, meaning "it."

1. برادرم از من بزرگتر است.
baraadar-am az man bozorgtar ast.
 "My brother is older than me"

Here you can see the possessive determiner *am* used to construct the possessive case, meaning "my."

2. Difference between written and spoken forms

As you may have noticed from the different forms of the possessive determiners, *-a-* (short *a* sound) changes to *-e-*, and *-aa-* (long *a* sound) changes to *-oo-*. Only the first person singular does not change.

Chart

Written Persian	Romanization	Spoken Persian	Romanization	English
دوستم	<i>doostam</i>	دوستم	<i>doostam</i>	"my friend"
دوستت	<i>doostat</i>	دوستت	<i>doostet</i>	"your friend" (singular)
دوستش	<i>doostash</i>	دوستش	<i>doostesh</i>	"his/her/its friend"
دوستمان	<i>doostemaan</i>	دوستمون	<i>doostemoon</i>	"our friend"
دوستتان	<i>doostetaan</i>	دوستتون	<i>doostetoon</i>	"your friend" (plural)
دوستشان	<i>doosteshaan</i>	دوستشون	<i>doosteshoon</i>	"their friend"

Sample sentences (with both written and spoken forms listed above)

Written Persian	Romanization	Spoken Persian	Romanization	English
چمدانت را بستنی؟	<i>chamedaan-at raa basti?</i>	چمدونت رو بستنی؟	<i>chamedoonet ro basti?</i>	Did you pack your luggage?
کیف پولم را میخوام.	<i>kif-e pool-am raa mikhaadam.</i>	کیف پولم رو میخوام.	<i>kif-e poolam ro mikhaam.</i>	I want my wallet.

Also, the object marker را (*raa*) is reduced to رو (*ro*) and in some cases و (*o*). You will master this by listening to native speakers. And soon you will realize that it really eases the pronunciation of words.

3. Words ending in -aa or -oo

When the word to which the pronoun personal endings are added ends in ا (*alef*) or و (*vaav*), ی (*ye, y*) is inserted for ease of pronunciation. However, with the plural marker ها (*haa*), it is also common to drop -ya/-ye. For example, "my feet" in written form is پاهایم (*paahaayam*), but in spoken form it is reduced to پاهام (*paahaam*). In some words, we can drop *h* for ease of pronunciation. As جوراب هایش (*jooraab haayash*), meaning "his socks," can be reduced to جوراباش (*jooraabaash*).

Here are some more examples:

Persian	Romanization	English
رویم	<i>roo-yam</i>	"My face"
رویش	<i>roo-yash</i>	"On/upon it/him/her"
موهایشان	<i>moo-haa-yeshan</i>	"Their hair"
پاهایش	<i>paa-haa-yash</i>	"His/her/its feet"
جوراب هایتان	<i>jooraab-haa-yetaan</i>	"Your socks"
بویش	<i>booyash</i>	"Its smell/ fragrance"

Sample sentences

1. (پاهام (پاهایم) درد می کنن (می کنند).
paahaam (paa-haa-yam) dard mikonan (mikonand).
"My feet hurt."
2. (موهامو شونه کردم (موهایم را شانه کردم).
moohaam-o shoone kardam. (moo-haa-yam raa shaane kardam.)
"I combed my hair."

In Persian, we use موها (*moo haa* meaning "hairs"), which is the plural of مو (*moo* - "a hair"), to refer to what you mean when you say "all the hair on your head" in English.

Examples from the Dialogue

1. تا کی لازمش داری؟
taa key laazemesh daari?
"Until when do you need it?"
2. تا فردا بعد از ظهر. فقط میخوام (می خواهم) ازش (از آن) کپی بگیرم.
taa fardaa ba'd az zohr. faqat mikhaam (mikhaaham) azash (az aan) kopi begiram.
"Until tomorrow afternoon. I just want to make a copy of it."

1. هنوز پولمو (پولم را) ازش (از او) نگرفتم.
hanooz poolam-o (poolam raa) azash (az oo) nagereftam.
"I haven't gotten my money from him/her."
2. ازت یه سؤال بپرسم؟
azat ye (yek) so'aal beporsam?
"Can I ask you a question?"
3. از من چی میخوای (میخواهی)؟
az man chi mikhaay (mikhaahi)?
"What do you want from me?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

University student life and cramming

At university, there are always a couple of students that take great notes and they are usually popular with other students all the way to graduation. And it is quite common to cram at universities, meaning that you get ready for finals only by starting to study the week before. In Iran, the grading system is out of twenty. You will fail if you can not get 10 out of 20 and you have to repeat the course. Most of the time, cramming works if you take good notes or at least a copy of them.

Some boys take advantage of this to get close to the girl they have a crush on. A funny trick that never gets old-fashioned!

Useful expression

1. خرخون
khar khoon
"Bookworm"

Kharkhoon is made up of two parts: *khar* plus *khoon*. *Khar* means "donkey" and is the symbol of hard and long work. *Khoon* is the colloquial form of *khaan*, which is the subjunctive stem of the verb *khaandan*, meaning "to read." So *kharkhoon* is a student who studies a lot. It might be translated to "bookworm" or "nerd" in English.

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #16

Going Book Shopping in Iran

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#16

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. فریبا : کتابای (کتابهای) ترم سوم رو (را) خریدی؟
2. هدی : نه، هنوز وقت نکردم برم (بروم) کتابفروشی. بهت (به تو) گفته بودم که سرم شلوغه (شلوغ است).
3. فریبا : پس بیا چهارشنبه با هم بریم (برویم).
4. هدی : چهارشنبه نمیتونم (نمی توانم) بیام. کلاس آخرم دیروقت تموم (تمام) میشه (می شود).
5. فریبا : پنجشنبه چطور؟
6. هدی : پنجشنبه خوبه (خوب است)، ساعت چند و کجا همدیگرو (همدیگر را) ببینیم؟
7. فریبا : ساعت ۲ بعد از ظهر جلوی در دانشگاه.
8. هدی : باشه، حتماً میام (می آیم).

ROMANIZATION

1. Faribaa : ketaab-haa-ye term-e sewvom ro (raa) kharidi?
2. Hoda : na, hanooz vaqt nakardam beram (beravam) ketaabforooshi. behet (be to) gofte boodam ke saram shoologhe (shoologh ast).
3. Faribaa : pas biala chaahaar shanbe baa ham berim (beravim).
4. Hoda : chaahaar shanbe nemitoonam (nemitavaanam) biyaam (biyaayam). kelaas-e aakharam dir vaqt tamoom (tamaam) mishe (mishavad).
5. Faribaa : panjshanbe chetor?
6. Hoda : panjshanbe khoobe (khoob ast), saa'at-e chand? va kojaa hamdigar-o (hamdigar raa) bebinim?
7. Faribaa : saa'at-e do b'ad az zohr joloy-e dar-e daaneshgaah.
8. Hoda : baashe, hatman miyaam (miyaayam).

ENGLISH

1. Fariba : Did you buy the third term's books?
2. Hoda : No, I haven't had time to go to the bookstore yet. I had told you I was busy.
3. Fariba : Then, let's go together on Wednesday.
4. Hoda : I can't go on Wednesday. My last class finishes late in the evening.
5. Fariba : How about Thursday?
6. Hoda : Thursday is cool. What time and where shall we see each other?
7. Fariba : At two in the afternoon, in front of the university gate.
8. Hoda : Okay, I will definitely go.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
کتابفروشی	ketaabforooshi	bookstore	noun
خوب	khoob	cool	noun
تمام شدن	tamaam shodan	to finish	verb
ساعت چند؟	saa'at-e chand	what time	interrogative phrase
دیروقت	dir avght	late (in the evening)	adverb
وقت کردن	vaqt kardan	to get around to	verb
ترم	term	term	noun
کجا	kojaa	where	adverb
با هم	baa ham	together	adverb
همدیگر	ham digar	each other	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>یه (یک) کتابفروشی معروف تو خیابون (در خیابان) سوم هست.</p> <p><i>ye (yek) ketaabfoorooshi-ye ma'roof too khiyaaoon-e (dar khiyaabaan-e) sewom hast.</i></p> <p>There is a famous bookstore on the 3rd street.</p>	<p>یک کتابفروشی معروف در خیابان سوم وجود دارد.</p> <p><i>yek ketaabforooshiye ma'roof dar khiyaabaan-e sevom vojud daarad.</i></p> <p>There is a famous bookstore on 3rd Avenue.</p>
<p>اون (او) معلم خوبییه (خوبی است).</p> <p><i>oon (oo) mo'allem-e khoobiye (khoobi ast).</i></p> <p>He(she)'s a good teacher.</p>	

<p>ساعت چن (چند) میرن (می روند)؟ <i>saa'at chan (chand) miran (miravand)?</i> What time are they going?</p>	<p>شوهرم دیروقت از سر کار برمی گرده (برمی گردد). <i>shoharam dir vaqt az sar-e kaar barmigarde (bar migardad).</i> My husband comes home from work late.</p>
<p>وقت نکردم برم (بروم) آرایشگاه. <i>vaqt nakardam beram (beravam) aaraayeshgaah.</i> I didn't get around to going to the salon.</p>	<p>ترم دوم کی تموم (تمام) میشه (می شود)؟ <i>term-e dovom key tamoom (tamaam) mishe (mishavad)?</i> When does the second term end?</p>
<p>فردا شب کجا میری (می روی)؟ <i>fardaa shab kojaa miri (miravi)?</i> Where are you going tomorrow night?</p>	<p>اون کلاهو (آن کلاه را) از کجا گرفتی؟ <i>oon kolaah-o (aan kolaah raa) az kojaa gerefti?</i> Where did you get that hat?</p>
<p>فردا شب کجا خواهید رفت؟ <i>fardaa shab kojaa khaahid raft?</i> Where are you going tomorrow night?</p>	<p>بیا باهم برقصیم! <i>biyaa baa ham beraqsim!</i> Let's dance together!</p>
<p>دو ساله (سال است) که همدیگرو (همدیگر را) ندیدیم! <i>do saale (saal ast) ke hamdigar-o (hamdigar raa) nadidim.</i> It's been two years since we have seen each other!</p>	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

دیروقت

dir avght

"late (in the evening)"

Dir, دیر, ("late") + *vaght*, وقت, ("time") = *dir vaght*, ("late time").

It's used to refer to a late time at night.

For example:

1. دیروقت برگشت.

dir vaght bargasht.

"He/she was back late."

ساعت چند؟

saa'at-e chand

"what time"

Saa'at, ساعت, ("watch, clock, time") + *chand*, چند, ("how much", "how many").

It's a colloquial informal phrase. You can also drop the *ezaafeh* and say *saa'at chand*. *che* (چه ساعتی؟ *che saa'ati*) is another phrase you can use to ask the time. It means "what time," too. It can be used in formal settings.

For example:

1. پروازت ساعت چنده (چند است)؟
parvaazet saa'at chandeh (chand ast)?
"What time's your flight?"

همدیگر

ham digar

"each other, one another"

Ham (هم) is a preposition with several meanings and mainly refers to another person(s) or having something in common with them. **Digar** (دیگر) means "other," "another," "else."

Hamdige (همدیگه) is the colloquial form of this compound pronoun. **Yek** (یک) means "one," **digar** (دیگر) "another." **Yekdigar** (یکدیگر), "one another," is another similar word used in formal writing or speech.

For example:

1. با همدیگه (همدیگر) حرف زدیم.
baa hamdige (ham digar) harf zadim.
"We talked to each other."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Past Perfect

(نه، هنوز وقت نکردم برم (بروم) کتابفروشی. بهت (به تو) گفته بودم که سرم شلوغه (شلوغ است).
na, hanooz vaqt nakardam beram (beravam) ketaabforooshi. behet (be to) gofte boodam ke saram shoolooghe (shoologh ast).

"No, I haven't had time to go to bookstore yet. I had told you I was busy."

In this lesson, we will learn:

1. The past perfect
2. Difference between written and spoken forms

1. The past perfect

The past perfect is constructed by the addition of the past simple of the auxiliary verb "to be" to the past participle. The stress falls on the last syllable of the participle. In Persian, the past participle is constructed by the addition of an -e to the past stem of the verbs.

For example, in *رفته بودم* (*rafte boodam*), **boodam** is the past simple of the verb "to be," and **rafte** is the past participle of the verb "to go."

You can use the past perfect tense in situations similar to the situations where you would use the past perfect in English.

To negate this verb tense, you just add prefix *na-* to the base verb.

Conjugation chart

Verb "to go"

Persian	Romanization	English
رفته بودم	<i>rafte boodam</i>	I had gone
رفته بودی	<i>rafte boodi</i>	You had gone
رفته بود	<i>rafte bood</i>	She/he/it had gone
رفته بودیم	<i>rafte boodim</i>	We had gone
رفته بودید	<i>rafte boodid</i>	You had gone
رفته بودند	<i>rafte boodand</i>	They had gone

Verb "to hear"

Persian	Romanization	English
شنیده بودم	<i>shenide boodam</i>	I had heard
شنیده بودی	<i>shenide boodi</i>	You had heard
شنیده بود	<i>shenide bood</i>	She/he/it had heard
شنیده بودیم	<i>shenide boodim</i>	We had heard
شنیده بودید	<i>shenide boodid</i>	You had heard
شنیده بودند	<i>shenide boodand</i>	They had heard

Verb "to eat"

Persian	Romanization	English
خورده بودم	<i>khorde boodam</i>	I had eaten
خورده بودی	<i>khorde boodi</i>	You had eaten
خورده بود	<i>khorde bood</i>	She/he/it had eaten
خورده بودیم	<i>khorde boodim</i>	We had eaten
خورده بودید	<i>khorde boodid</i>	You had eaten
خورده بودند	<i>khorde boodand</i>	They had eaten

Sample sentences

- گربه روی صندلی نشسته بود.
gorbe roo-ye sandali neshaste bood.

"The cat had sat on the chair."

2. سال قبل به ونیز آمده بود.

saal-e qabl be veniz aamade bood.

"He/she had come to Venice last year."

2. Difference between written and spoken forms

The difference between spoken form and written form includes changing *aa* to *oo*, *a* to *e*, *a* to *o*, *o* to *oo*. It also includes changing verb endings in the past tense of the verb بودن (*boodan*) (second and third person plural), and dropping *e* and *i* sounds (letters) in some words. You can find some of these changes in the examples below.

Written Persian	Romanization	Spoken Persian	Romanization	English
خوانده بودید	<i>khaande boodid</i>	خونده بودین	<i>khoonde boodin</i>	"You had read"
شسته بودند	<i>shoste boodand</i>	شسته بودن	<i>shoste boodan</i>	"They had washed"
آمده بودید	<i>aamade boodid</i>	اومده بودین	<i>oomade boodin</i>	"You had come"
شکسته بودند	<i>shekaste boodand</i>	شکسته بودن	<i>shekaste boodan</i>	"They had broken"
آورده بودید	<i>aavarde boodid</i>	آورده بودین	<i>aavorde boodin</i>	"You had brought"
شنیده بودید	<i>shenide boodid</i>	شنیده بودین	<i>shenide boodin</i>	"You had heard"
نشنیده بودم	<i>nashenide boodam</i>	نشنیده بودم	<i>nashnide boodam</i>	"I had not heard"
گفته بودید	<i>gofte boodid</i>	گفته بودین	<i>gofte boodin</i>	"You had told/said"

Sample sentences (with both written and spoken forms listed above)

Written Persian	Romanization	Spoken Persian	Romanization	English
به سینما رفته بودند.	<i>be sinamaa rafte boodand.</i>	رفته بودن سینما.	<i>rafte boodan sinamaa.</i>	"They had gone to the movies."
برایمان کلوچه آورده بودید.	<i>baraayemaan koloche avarde boodid.</i>	برامون کلوچه آورده بودین.	<i>baraamoon koolooche avorde boodin.</i>	"You had brought us sweets."

Sample Sentences

1. این فیلمو (فیلم را) ندیده بودم.
in film-o (film raa) nadide boodam.
"I hadn't seen that movie."
2. به اون (آن) موزه نرفته بود.
be oon (aan) mooze narafte bood.
"He/she hadn't gone to that museum."
3. این کارو (کار را) نکرده بود.
in kar-o (kaar raa) nakarde bood.
"He hadn't done this."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Tehran International Book Fair

Tehran International Book Fair is held in Tehran early in May on an annual basis, and it lasts 10 days. Millions of visitors visit the fair, including thousands of university students and scholars. Books from major domestic and some foreign publishers are presented and sold. Books are in Persian, Arabic, French, German, Chinese, Korean, or Japanese. Many people take a trip to Tehran just to enjoy this cultural event. Students are granted discounts and coupons.

Useful expression

1. نمایشگاه کتاب
namaayeshgaah-e ketaab
"book fair"

You can translate نمایشگاه to "exhibition," "exposition," or "fair," depending on the context.

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #17

Going for Breakfast in Iran

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#17

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. مریم : سلام، حال شما چگونه (چطور است)؟
2. جمشید : سلام، خوب، شما چطورید؟
3. مریم : خوب مرسی.
4. جمشید : شما صبحونه (صبحانه) خوردید؟
5. مریم : نه خیلی هم گرسنه هستم.
6. جمشید : پس بریم (برویم) کافه یک (یه) چیزی بخوریم.
7. مریم : آره فکر خوبییه (خوبی است).
8. جمشید : پس زود بریم (برویم) و برگردیم.

ROMANIZATION

1. Maryam : salaam, haal-e shomaa chetore (chetor ast)?
2. Jamshid : salaam, khoobam, shomaa chetorid?
3. Maryam : khoobam mersi.
4. Jamshid : shomaa sobhoone (sobhaane) khordid?
5. Maryam : na kheyli ham gorosne hastam.
6. Jamshid : pas berim (beravim) kaafe ye (yek) chizi bokhorim.
7. Maryam : aare fekr-e khoobie (khoobi ast).
8. Jamshid : pas zood berim-o (beravim va) bargardim.

ENGLISH

1. Maryam : Hello, how are you?
2. Jamshid : Hello, I'm fine. How are you?
3. Maryam : I'm fine, thanks.
4. Jamshid : Have you had breakfast?
5. Maryam : No, and I'm very hungry.
6. Jamshid : So, let's go to a cafe and eat something.
7. Maryam : Yeah, that's a good idea.
8. Jamshid : Then let's go and be back soon.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
چطور (چطور است)	chetore (chetor ast)	how is	phrase
چطورید؟	chetorid?	How are you?	sentence
آری / آره	aare / aari	yeah, yes	particle
فکر	fekr	idea	noun
گرسنه/گشنه	gorosne/goshne	hungry	adjective
کافه	kaafe	coffee shop/cafe	noun
چطوری	chetori	how	adverb
پس	pas	so	adverb
صبحانه	sobhaane	breakfast	noun
زود	zood	early, soon	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

این روسری آبی چطوره؟ <i>in roosari-ye aabi chetore?</i> How about this blue scarf?	سلام، چطورید؟ <i>salaam, chetorid?</i> Hi, how are you doing?
آره باید بهش خبر بدیم. <i>aare baayad behesh khabar bedim.</i> Yeah, we should let him (her) know.	گشنه اته (گرسنه هستی)؟ <i>goshnate (gorosne hasti)?</i> Are you hungry?

<p>رفتیم تویه (داخل یک) کافه. <i>raftim too ye (daakhel-e yek) caafe.</i> We went into a cafe.</p>	<p>چطوری برم میدون انقلاب؟ <i>chetori beram meydoon-e enqelaab?</i> How do I get to Enqelab square?</p>
<p>بهم یاد بده چطوری از کنترل استفاده کنم. <i>behem yaad bede chetori az kontorol estefaade konam.</i> Tell me how to use the remote control.</p>	<p>چطوری توانستید از این راه بروید؟ <i>chetori tavaanestid az in raah beravid?</i> How did you go by this way?</p>
<p>چطوری بروم میدان انقلاب؟ <i>chetori beravam meydaan-e enqelaab?</i> How can I go to Enghelab Square?</p>	<p>اگر خسته‌ای، پس کار نکن! <i>agar khaste'i, pas kaar nakon.</i> If you're tired, then don't work!</p>
<p>صبحانه چی خوردی؟ <i>sobhaane chi khordi?</i> What did you have for breakfast?</p>	<p>برای صبحانه چی خوردی؟ <i>baraaye sobhaane chi khordi?</i> What did you have for breakfast?</p>
<p>زود برمیگردم! <i>zood barmigardam.</i> I'll be back soon!</p>	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

چطورید؟

chetorid?

"How are you doing?" "How?"

This phrase is made up of چطور (chetor), "how," plus ید (id), which is the pronoun ending for second person plural and is the conjugated form of the verb بودن (boodan), "to be"; hence, it can be translated to "are." Since verb endings are self explanatory. We can omit the pronoun "you," or in Persian, شما (shomaa).

Chetori (the informal version of *chetorid*, second person singular) when used as a greeting means "How are you?" Otherwise, it simply means "How?"

In formal settings, it means "How are you?", you can say حال شما چطوره؟ *haal-e shomaa chetoreh?* too.

There's a nuance between *chetori* as a greeting and when you mean "How," in terms of intonation. In the first case, your voice goes up, and in the latter it goes down.

For example:

چطوری؟

chetorid?

"How are you doing?"

صبحانه

sobhaane

"breakfast"

This word is made up of *sobh*, "morning," and *aneh*, which is a suffix meaning "relate to" and turns a noun into an adjective. In this case, we use the whole word as a single word for the first meal in the morning. The role of this suffix in changing the base word's meaning can be better understood in some words, such as *مردانه* (*mardaneh*), meaning "male, mannish, manly," and *زنانه* (*zanaaneh*), meaning "feminine, womanly, womanish." We use them in phrases like *لباس زنانه* (*lebaas-e zanaaneh*), "women's clothing."

For example:

صبحانه (صبحانه) خوردی؟

sobaaneh (sobhaaneh) khordi?

"Have you had breakfast?"

زود

zood

"soon, early"

Zood means "early" but there are times that it can mean "soon."

Example 1: من صبح زود بیدار شدم: (*man sobh-e zood bidaar shodam*), "I woke up early in the morning."

Example 2: بعد از کار زود به خانه رفتم: (*bad az kaar zood beh khaaneh raftam*), "After work I went home soon."

For example:

!(گفتن گفتند) زود میان (می آیند - خواهند آمد

goftan (goftand) zood miyaan (mi-aayand meaning khaahand aamand)

"They said they were going to be early! "

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Loanwords

خوبم مرسی.

khoobam mersi.

"I'm fine thanks."

In this lesson, we will learn about:

1. Loanwords in Persian

2. Words with Persian roots in other languages

1. Loanwords in Persian

Languages are living organisms. Cultures have always been interacting, and these interactions will reflect on the languages involved in these transforming experiences. Therefore, loanwords are reminiscent of deep and long-lasting exchanges between nations around the world throughout the course of history. Some nations decide if they want to refer to the exotic objects and concepts with the same words used in the original language. Some will name them using words which are already familiar to them.

Iran has been a cultural melting pot, one of the major spots on the Silk Road. It is a link between East Asia and Europe. It has always been open to the novelties from around the globe. No wonder we have lots of loanwords from languages, such as Arabic, French, and English. In recent years, Iran's Academy of Persian Language and Literature has tried to replace the foreign words with original Persian words. It is necessary for language learners to at least get to know these words, as they might encounter them in official correspondences, TV news, or newspapers. But in daily conversations, there's no obligation to use such words, since the loanwords sound more familiar or beautiful or are sometimes much easier to pronounce.

Since the introduction of Islam, the Persian language has changed a lot. There have been a great number of Arabic words in Persian today, so replacing them with original Persian words is somehow impossible.

Most of the computer and technology words are borrowed from English. You'll hear کامپیوتر, *kaampiyooter*, ("computer"), پرینت, *pirint*, ("print"), and اکسل, *eksel*, ("excel") every day.

Here are some common loanwords from other languages.

Persian	Romanization	Language of origin	English
مرسی	<i>mersi</i>	France (<i>merci</i>)	thanks
کافه	<i>kaafe</i>	France (<i>cafe</i>)	cafe
آپارتمان	<i>aapaartemaan</i>	France (<i>appartement</i>)	apartment
آسانسور	<i>aasaansor</i>	France (<i>ascenseur</i>)	elevator
آیفون	<i>aayfon</i>	English (<i>interphone</i>)	intercom
اتوبان	<i>ootoobaan</i>	German (<i>autobahn</i>)	expressway, highway
اسپری	<i>esperey</i>	English (<i>spray</i>)	spray
بالکن	<i>baalkon</i>	French (<i>balcon</i>)	balcony
بلوار	<i>bolvaar</i>	French (<i>boulevard</i>)	boulevard
بوفه	<i>boofe</i>	French (<i>buffet</i>)	buffet
پارکت	<i>paarket</i>	French (<i>parquet</i>)	parquet
پورسانت	<i>poorsaant</i>	French (<i>pourcentage</i>)	percentage
سماور	<i>samaavar</i>	Russian (<i>самовар</i>)	Samovar (a metal urn with a spigot at the base; used in Russia to boil water for tea)

Sample sentences

- از این یه (یک) کپی برام (برای من) بگیر.
az in ye (yek) kopi baraam begir.
"Make me a copy of this."
- ..امشب میخوایم بریم (می خواهیم برویم) تئاتر.
emshab mikhaaym berim (mikhaahim beravim) te'aatr.
"Tonight we're going to the theater (to watch a play)."
- پاراگراف سومو (سوم را) حذف کن.
paaraageraaf-e sevvom-o hazf kon.
"Delete the third paragraph"

Here is a list of words recommended by the Iran's Academy of Persian Language and Literature.

Common loanword	Romanization	Recommended word	Romanization
آرشیو	<i>aarshiv</i> "archive"	بایگانی	<i>baaygaani</i>
پرسنل	<i>personel</i> "personel"	کارکنان	<i>kaarkonaan</i>
کمپس	<i>kampes</i> "university campus"	پردیس	<i>pardis</i>
ابتکار	<i>ebtekaar (Arabic)</i> "innovation"	نوآوری	<i>no aavari</i>

2. Words with Persian roots in other languages

Persian is an Indo-European language. There are some words of Sanskrit origin in Persian that have transformed to some words you might see in English. Here are some examples.

"Sugar": شکر, *shekar*

It is one of the words that has had a long journey to find its way into the English language. It was first a word in Sanskrit. After some changes through Persian and Arabic, it was introduced to English.

"Orange" (color): نارنجی, *naarenji*

Like "sugar" from Sanskrit, which went through some changes in Arabic and then Persian. It's interesting to know that we call نارنگی, *naarengi* is "Tangerine" in English.

"Candied" (sugary): قندی, *ghandi*

You might have seen people use "sugar cubes" in Iran, Turkey, and some Arab countries. We call them قند, *ghand*.

"Lemon": لیمو, *limoo*

شربت آبلیمو, *sharbat-e aab limo*, is "lemonade" in English.

"Bazaar": بازار, *baazaar*

"Pajamas": پای جامه, *paa jaameh* or پای جامه, *paay jaameh*

It is made up of پا, *paa*, ("foot", "leg") and جامه, *jaameh*, ("clothes", "togs", "garment"). This is an old term. We use پیژامه, *pizhaameh* in modern Persian. Unlike in English, in Iran پیژامه, *pizhameh*, consists only of pants, not a shirt or top.

"Jungle": جنگل, *jangal*

Again, a Sanskrit root.

"Pistachios": پسته, *peste*

Sample sentences

1. جمعه بازارارو (بازارها را) خیلی دوست دارم.
jom'e baazaaraar-o (baazaar haa raa) kheyli doost daaram.
"I like Friday markets a lot."
2. (زعفران زرد رنگه) رنگ است.
za'feraan zard range (rang ast).
"Zaffron is yellow color."

Words like مادر, *maadar*, ("mother"), پدر, *pedar*, ("father"), برادر, *baraadar*, ("brother"), دختر, *dokhtar*, ("daughter"), بد, *bad*, ("bad"), بهتر, *behtar*, ("better"), رنگ خاکی, *rang-e khaaki*, ("khaki"), تو, *to*, ("you" - old English ("thou")), شال, *shaal*, ("shawl"), and tens of other words show how related languages are.

Examples from the Dialogue

پس بریم (برویم) کافه یک (یه) چیزی بخوریم.
pas berim (beravim) kaafe ye (yek) chizi bekhorem.

"So, let's go to a cafe and eat something."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Traditional breakfast

The combination of cheese (*panir*), butter, jam, and bread served with black tea makes up a traditional Iranian breakfast. There are a variety of traditional breads. Some are just made locally. Barbari, Sangak, and Lavash are the ones you can find almost everywhere in Iran. Sangak is the one made of wholesome wheat flour and considered the healthiest among these.

Some may fancy eating Khash, also known as کله پاچه (*Kalleh pacheh*). It's a dish of boiled cow's or sheep's feet and/or head; although, other cow parts, such as the brain, tongue, and stomach, may also be used. It is a heavy and fatty dish.

Useful expression

نان آور

naan aavar

"breadwinner"

In modern Iran, bread and rice are the dietary staple food for the population. نان (*naan*) changes into نون (*noon*) in conversations. *Naan*, as in English, is the symbol of money and income. نان آور means "breadwinner." آور is the subjunctive stem of the verb آوردن ("to bring"), and in this compound noun refers to the person who brings bread (money) to the family.

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #18

Spending Time on the Farm in Iran

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#18

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. مریم : این عکس مزرعه پدربزرگمه (پدربزرگم است).
2. فریبا : پدربزرگت چه حیوونایی دارن (دارند)?
3. مریم : از همشون (همه اشان) عکس دارم. ببین! دو تا گاو ماده و یه (یک) گوساله.
4. فریبا : چه گوساله بانمکی!
5. مریم : بز و گوسفند هم دارن (دارند). این بره تازه به دنیا اومده (آمده) بود.
6. فریبا : سگشون چه بزرگه (سگشان چه بزرگ است)!
7. مریم : دوتا ژرمن شپرد دارن!
8. فریبا : اسبم دارن (اسب هم دارند)?
9. مریم : آره! یه (یک) مادیاں سفید! نمیدونم (نمی دانم) چرا عکسش اینجا نیست!
10. فریبا : دوست دارم سال دیگه باهات برم اینجا (دوست دارم سال دیگر با تو به اینجا بروم)!
11. مریم : حتماً!

ROMANIZATION

1. Maryam : in aks-e mazra'e-ye pedar bozorgame (pedar bozorgam ast).
2. Fariba : pedarbozorget che heyvoonaayi daaran (darand)?
3. Maryam : az hamashoon (heme eshaan) aks daaram. bebin! do taa gaav-e maadde-o (va) ye (yek) gosaale.
4. Fariba : che gosaale-ye baa namaki!
5. Maryam : boz-o (va) goosfand daaran (daarand). in barre taaze be donyaa oomade (aamade) bood.
6. Fariba : sageshoon che bozorge (sageshaan che bozorg ast).
7. Maryam : do taa zherman sheperd daaran (daarand).
8. Fariba : asbam daaran (asb ham daarand)?
9. Maryam : aare! ye (yek) maadiyaan-e sefid! nemidoonam (nemidaanam) cheraa aksesh (aksash) injaa nis (nist)!
10. Fariba : doost daaram saal-e dige baahaat beram injaa (doost daaram saal-e digar baa to be injaa beravam).
11. Maryam : hatman!

ENGLISH

1. Maryam : This is a picture of my grandfather's farm.
2. Fariba : What kind of animals does he have?
3. Maryam : I've got pictures of all of them. Look! Two cows and a calf.
4. Fariba : What a cute calf!
5. Maryam : They have goats and sheep. This lamb was just born.
6. Fariba : How big his dog is!
7. Maryam : He's got two German Shepherds!
8. Fariba : Does he have horses too?
9. Maryam : Yeah! A mare! I don't know why her photo's not here!
10. Fariba : I'd like to go there with you!
11. Maryam : Sure, why not!

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
مزرعه	mazra'e	farm	noun
عکس	aks	picture	noun
بز	boz	goat	noun
اسب	asb	horse	noun
مادبان	maadiyaan	mare	noun
سگ	sag	dog	noun
پدربزرگ	pedar bozorg	grandfather	noun
به دنیا آمدن	be donyaa aamadan	to be born	verb
بانمک	baa namak	cute	adjective
حتماً	hatman	sure	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

این منطقه مزرعه زیاد داره (دارد). <i>in mantaghe mazra'e ziyaad daare (daarad).</i> This region has a lot of farms.	من بیشتر از دو هزار تا عکس دارم. <i>man bishtar az do hezaar taa aks daaram.</i> I have more than two thousand pictures (photos).
---	---

<p>احتمالاً، الان به عالمه عکس رو کامپیوترم دارم. <i>ehtemaalan alaan ye aalame aks roo kaampiyooteram daaram.</i> I probably have millions of pictures on my computer right now.</p>	<p>شیر بز دوست ندارم. <i>shir-e boz doost nadaaram.</i> I don't like goats milk.</p>
<p>بزها در مزرعه بازی می کنند. <i>boz-haa dar mazra'e baazi mikonand.</i> The goats are playing on the farm.</p>	<p>اسب در کشتزار <i>Asb dar keshtzaar</i> horse in a field</p>
<p>اسب سواری <i>Asb savaari</i> ride a horse</p>	<p>اسب ها حیوانات زیبایی هستند. <i>Asbhaa heyvaanaat-e zibaayi hastand.</i> Horses are beautiful animals.</p>
<p>اسب در کشتزار در حال دویدن است. <i>Asb dar keshtzaar dar haal-e davidan ast.</i> The horse is running in the field.</p>	<p>اسب سواری رو (سواری را) دوست دارم. <i>asb savaari ro (savaari raa) doost daaram.</i> I like horseback riding.</p>
<p>اسب در دشت در حال دویدن است. <i>asb dar dasht dar haale davidan ast.</i> The horse is running in the field.</p>	<p>این مادبان سیاه زیبا است. <i>in maadiyaan-e siyaah zibaa ast.</i> This black mare is beautiful.</p>
<p>سگ پیر <i>sag-e pir</i> old dog</p>	<p>پسر یک سگ خانگی دارد. <i>pesar yek sag-e khaanegi daarad.</i> The boy has a pet dog.</p>
<p>سگ بزرگ <i>sag-e bozorg</i> big dog</p>	<p>سگ پشمالو <i>sag-e pashmaaloo</i> hairy dog</p>
<p>سگ کوچک در حیاط با توپ زرد بازی می کند. <i>sag-e koochak dar hayaat baa toop-e zard baazi mikonad.</i> The little dog is playing with a yellow ball in the yard.</p>	<p>سگ پشمالو دنبال توپ می دود. <i>sag-e pashmaaloo donbaal-e toop midavad.</i> The shaggy dog is running after the ball.</p>
<p>یک سگ قهوه ای و یک سگ سیاه <i>yek sag-e qahve i va yek sag-e siaah</i> a brown dog and a black dog</p>	<p>سگ حیوون (حیوان) وفاداربه (وفاداری است). <i>sag heyvoon-e (heyvaan-e) vafaadari-ye (vafaa daari ast).</i> Dogs are loyal animals.</p>
<p>سگ پشمالو در حال دویدن به دنبال توپ است. <i>sag-e pashmaaloo dar haal-e davidan be donbal-e toop ast.</i> The shaggy dog is running after a ball.</p>	<p>پدربزرگم نود سالشه (سالش است). <i>pedarbozorgam navad saaleshe (saalash ast).</i> My grandfather is 90.</p>

اون تو (او در) آمریکا به دنیا اومد (آمد). <i>oon too (oo dar) aamrikaa be donyaa oomad (aamad).</i> He/she was born in America.	با نمک میخندی! <i>baa namak mikhandi!</i> You have a cute laugh!
حتماً میرم (می‌روم). <i>hatman miram (miravam).</i> I'll surely go.	حتماً به شما کمک خواهم کرد. <i>hatman be shomaa komak khaaham kard.</i> Sure, I'll help you.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

بانمک

baa namak

"cute"

aa, با, ("with") + نمک, *namak*, ("salt") = بانمک, ***baa namak***, literally meaning "with salt" but means "cute."

There are other words which means cute and are actually a Arabic words. They are ملیح, ***malih*** and با ملاحه, ***baa melaahat***, which shares three letters of ملح, "m l h," which means "salt" in Arabic. It is not appropriate for a formal conversation.

For example:

1. (سگت خیلی بانمکه (با نمک است).
saget (sagat) kheily baa namakeh (baa namak ast).
"Your dog is very cute!"

به دنیا آمدن

beh donyaa amadan

"to be born"

Beh, به, ("to") + دنیا, ***donyaa***, ("world") + آمدن, ***aamadan***, ("to come") = به دنیا آمدن, ***beh donyaa aamadan***, (lit. "to come to (this/the) world," but means "to be born").

The colloquial form of *aamadan* is *oomadan*.

For example:

1. (من تو (در) سال ۱۹۸۴ به دنیا اومدم (آمدم).
man too saal-e hezaar-o nohsad-o hashtaad-o chaahar beh donyaa oomadam (aamadam).
"I was born in the year 1984."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Gender Neutrality

از همشون (همه اشان) عکس دارم. ببین! دو تا گاو ماده و یه (یک) گوساله.
az hamashoon (heme eshaan) aks daram. bebin! do taa gaav-e maadde-o (va) ye (yek) gosaale.
"I've got pictures of all of them. Look! Two cows and a calf."

In this lesson, we will learn about:

1. Gender neutrality
2. Expressing the gender: human beings
3. Expressing the gender: animals

1. Gender neutrality

Persian is a gender-neutral language. Verbs, adjectives, and pronouns don't have masculine, feminine, or neuter forms. For example, in Persian, for the 3rd person singular, there is one word for each of these groups:

. او (oo) or آن (aan), "he, she, it," which is the 3rd person singular subject pronoun,

. او/آن (baraay-e/ beh/ az oo/aan), "for/to/from him, her, it," which is the 3rd person singular object pronoun,

. او/آن (maak-e oo/aan) مال "his, her, its," which is the 3rd person singular possessive pronoun.

However, the gender can be shown via different nouns and adjectives.

Here are some male and female names in Persian. There are a few genderless names as well. There are many popular names from Arabic and related to the Islamic part of Iran's culture.

Persian	Romanization	English
فرهاد	<i>farhaad</i>	Farhad (male name)
مریم	<i>maryam</i>	Maryam (female name)
احمد	<i>ahmad</i>	Ahmad (male name)
سارا	<i>saaraa</i>	Sara (female name)
مرضیه	<i>marziye</i>	Marzieh (female name)
میلاد	<i>milaad</i>	Milad (male name)
متین	<i>matin</i>	Matin (genderless name)

Family names represent a person's ancestors:

- **origin:** تبریزی (*Tabrizi*) "from Tabriz, an Iranian city"; ایرانی (*Irani*) "from Iran"; اصفهانی (*Isfahani*) "from Isfahan, an Iranian city;"
- **occupation:** قالیباف (*Ghalibaf*) "carpet weaver"; چرمساز (*Charmsaz*) "leather maker"; نجاری (*Najari*) "carpentry;"
- **interests:** میهن دوست (*mihan doost*) "nationalist," شرع پسند (*shar' pasand*) "Sharia-friendly."

Sample sentences

1. کتاب شراره رو (را) بهش (به او) پس دادم.
ketaab-e sharaara-ro (sharaare raa) behesh (be oo) pas daadam.
"I gave Sharareh's book back to her."
2. سروناز با آقای شیرازی ازدواج کرد.
sarvenaaz baa aaghaa-ye shiraazi ezdevaaj kard.
"Sarvenaz married Mr. Shirazi."
3. اینجا دستشویی خانمهاست.
injaa dastshooyi-ye khaanoomaas (khaanoom haa ast).
"Here is the lady's room."

2. Expressing the gender: human beings

To indicate different genders, you can use مرد (*mard*) "man," زن (*zan*) "woman," پسر (*pesar*) "boy," and دختر (*dokhtar*) "girl." Let's see how with some sample sentences:

Persian	Romanization	English
پلیس مرد مهربان	<i>polis-e mard-e mehrabaan</i>	"kind policeman"
بازیگر زن موفق	<i>baazigar-e zan-e movaffaq</i>	"successful actress"
دانش آموز پسر شانزده ساله	<i>daanesh aamooz-e pesar-e shaanzdah saale</i>	"sixteen-year-old boy student"
دکترهای زن	<i>doktor-haa-ye zan</i>	"female doctors"
تکواندوکار دختر تیم ملی	<i>tekvaandokaar-e dokhtar-e tim-e melli</i>	"National team's girl Taekwondo athlete"
بازیگر مرد برنده اسکار	<i>baazigar-e mard-e barande-ye oskaar</i>	"Oscar-winning actor"
پزشک مرد حاذق	<i>pezeshk-e mard-e haazegh</i>	"qualified male physician"
منشی خانم	<i>monshi-ye khaanoom</i>	"female secretary"
خدمتکار مرد	<i>khedmatkaar-e mard</i>	"male servant"

Sample sentences

1. تو (در) مدرسه فقط معلم مرد داریم.
too (dar) madrese faqat mo'alleem-e mard daarim.
"We have only male teachers at school."
2. دانش آموزان دختر باید در مدرسه حجاب داشته باشند.
daanesh aamoozaan-e dokhtar baayad dar madrese hejaab daashte baashand.

"Girl students have to have ijab at school."

3. این بیمارستان پرستار مرد کمتر استخدام می کند.
in bimaarestaan parastaar-e mard kamtar estekhdaam mikonad.
"This hospital hires less male nurses."

3. Expressing the gender: animals

There are different nouns used to address female and male animals. In addition to those special ones, there are two adjectives to describe gender in animals in Persian: ماده (*maadde*), "female," and نر (*nar*), "male."

Let's see what to call different animals:

Persian (masculine noun)	Romanization	Persian (feminine noun)	Romanization	English
گاو نر	<i>gaav-e nar</i>	گاو ماده	<i>gaav-e maadde</i>	"Bull" / "cow"
خروس	<i>khooroos</i>	مرغ	<i>morgh</i>	"rooster" / "hen"
اسب نر	<i>asb-e nar</i>	مادیان	<i>madiyaan</i>	"horse" / "mare"
خرگوش نر	<i>khargoosh-e nar</i>	خرگوش ماده	<i>khargooshe maadde</i>	"buck" / "doe"
گوزن نر	<i>gavazn-e nar</i>	گوزن ماده	<i>gavazn-e maadde</i>	"buck" / "doe"

Sample sentences

1. تو (در) باغشون (باغشان) مرغ و خروس دارن (دارند).
too (dar) baagheshoon (baaghshaan) morgh-o khooroos (khorooos) daaran (daarand).
"They have (keep) roosters and hens in their garden."
2. گاوهای نر را پس از تولد از مادرشان جدا می کنند.
gaav-haa-ye nar raa pas az tavallod az maadareshaan jodaa mikonand.
"Bull calves are separated from their mothers after birth."
3. به (یک) خرگوش نر و به (یک) خرگوش ماده خریدم.
ye (yek) khargoosh-e nar o (va) ye (yek) khargoosh-e maadde kharidam.
"I bought a buck and a doe (a male and a female deer)."

Sample Sentences

1. خانم سرمدی امروز نمیاد (نمی آید) سر کار.
khaanoom-e sarmadi emrooz nemiyaad (nemi aayad) sar-e kar.
"Ms. Sarmadi won't come to work today."
2. (شیر ماده یال ندارد) ندارد.
shir-e madde yaal nadaare (nadaarad).
"A lioness doesn't have a mane."
3. (خروس تخم نمیگذارد) ندارد.
khooroos tokhm nemizaare (nemigozaarad).
"A rooster doesn't lay eggs."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Women-only

Women-only passenger cars on subways in Iran are aimed to help provide a safe and secure place for women who travel to work or school or just take the subway to run their daily errands.

In Iran there's also a taxi service with female taxi drivers provided for women. You can call a taxi from wherever in the city and they will send you a car from the nearest station.

Useful expression

1. تاکسی بانوان

taaksi-ye baanovaa

"Women's Taxi"

Banoo, بانو, is an honorable word to address women. It can be translated to "lady," "gentlewoman," or "dame" in English. The plural form is بانوان (*baanovaa*), "ladies."

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #19

Are You Visiting Iran for Business or Pleasure?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Persian
 - Main
 - Romanization
 - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#19

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. خانم میلانی : سلام روز بخیر به ایران خوش اومدین (آمدید).
2. جرج : سلام خیلی ممنون.
3. خانم میلانی : پاسپورت لطفاً!
4. جرج : بفرمائید!
5. خانم میلانی : چه مدت در ایران می مونید (می مانید)?
6. جرج : حدود ۳ هفته.
7. خانم میلانی : برای دیدار یا کار?
8. جرج : برای دیدار.
9. خانم میلانی : کجا اقامت دارین (دارید)?
10. جرج : در هتل آزادی.
11. خانم میلانی : خوش بگذره (بگذرد) روز خوش.
12. جرج : مرسی همچنین.

ROMANIZATION

1. Khanom-e Milaani : salaam rooz bekheyr be 'iraan khosh oomadin (aamadid).
2. Jorz : salaam kheyli mamnoon.
3. Khanom-e Milaani : paasport lotfan!
4. Jorz : bafarmaa'id!
5. Khanom-e Milaani : che moddat too 'iraan mimoonin (mimaanid)?
6. Jorz : hodood-e se hafte.
7. Khanom-e Milaani : baraay-e didaar yaa kaar?
8. Jorz : baraay-e didaar.
9. Khanom-e Milaani : kojaa eghaamat daarin (daarid)?
10. Jorz : dar hotel-e aazaadi.
11. Khanom-e Milaani : khosh begzare (begozarad) rooz khosh.
12. Jorz : mersi hamchenin.

ENGLISH

1. Mrs. Milani : Hello, good day, welcome to Iran.
2. George : Hello, thanks a lot.
3. Mrs. Milani : Passport, please.
4. George : Here you are.
5. Mrs. Milani : How long are you going to stay in Iran?
6. George : About 3 weeks.
7. Mrs. Milani : Business or a visit?
8. George : For a visit.
9. Mrs. Milani : Where are you going to stay?
10. George : At Azadi Hotel.
11. Mrs. Milani : Have a pleasant stay! Good day!
12. George : Thanks, same to you.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
اقامت کردن / ماندن	eghaamat kardan/ maandan	to stay	adverb
روز خوش / روز بخیر	rooz khosh / rooz bekeyr	(Have a) good day!	inerjection
پاسپورت / گذرنامه	paasport / gozarname	passport	noun
دیدار	didaar	visit	noun
کار	kaar	business	noun
چه مدت؟	che moddat?	How long?	interrogative word
حدود	hodood	about	adverb
خوش آمدید	khosh aamadid	welcome	verb
کجا	kojaa	where	adverb
چه	che	how, what, which	interrogative word

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>اقامت خوشی را برای شما آرزو می کنیم.</p> <p><i>eghaamat-e khoshi raa baraaye shomaa aarezoo mikonim.</i></p> <p>We wish you a pleasant stay.</p>	<p>روزتون خوش!</p> <p><i>roozetoon khosh!</i></p> <p>Have a good day!</p>
<p>باید پاسپورتمو (پاسپورتم را) تمدید کنم.</p> <p><i>baayad paasportam-o tamdid konam.</i></p> <p>I have to renew (extend the date of expiration of) my passport.</p>	<p>اخذ ویزای دیدار از خانواده ضروری است.</p> <p><i>akhz-e vizaay-e didaar az khaanehvaade zaroori ast.</i></p> <p>Obtaining a visitor's visa is required.</p>
<p>کارش داره میگیره.</p> <p><i>kaaresh daare migire.</i></p> <p>His (her) business is becoming bigger.</p>	<p>پدر من یک کسب و کار دارد.</p> <p><i>pedar-e man yek kasb-o kaar daarad.</i></p> <p>My dad owns a business.</p>
<p>چه مدت طول خواهد کشید؟</p> <p><i>che moddat tool khaahaad keshid?</i></p> <p>How long does it last?</p>	<p>شما حدود چه ساعتی می رسید؟</p> <p><i>shomaa hodoode che saa'ati miresid?</i></p> <p>About what time will you arrive?</p>
<p>به زندگی من خوش آمدید! (اسم یک برنامه تلویزیونی است)</p> <p><i>be zendegi-ye man khosh aamadid! (esm-e yek barnaame-ye telviziyoini ast)</i></p> <p>Welcome to my life! (TV show title)</p>	<p>فردا شب کجا میری (می روی)؟</p> <p><i>fardaa shab kojaa miri (miravi)?</i></p> <p>Where are you going tomorrow night?</p>
<p>اون کلاهو (آن کلاه را) از کجا گرفتی؟</p> <p><i>oon kolaah-o (aan kolaah raa) az kojaa gerefti?</i></p> <p>Where did you get that hat?</p>	<p>فردا شب کجا خواهید رفت؟</p> <p><i>fardaa shab kojaa khaahid raft?</i></p> <p>Where are you going tomorrow night?</p>
<p>چقدر (چه + قدر) پول لازم داری؟</p> <p><i>cheqadr (che + qadr) pool laazem daari?</i></p> <p>How much money do you need?</p>	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

خوش آمدید

khosh aamadid

"welcome to"

If we break down this phrase, we get خوش (***khosh***), "good, well" + آمد (***aamad***), "to come" conjugated for the second person plural.

Khosh oomadin, خوش اومدین is less formal. In informal situations, you can use خوش اومدی *khosh oomadi* (second person singular).

For example:

1. به ایران خوش آمدید.
beh iraan khosh aamadid.
"Welcome to Iran!"

خوش بگذره (بگذرد)

khosh begzareh

"Have a pleasant time." "Have fun."

Khosh, خوش, ("good," "nice," "pleasant," "happy") + بگذره, **begzareh**, the colloquial form of the verb بگذرد, **begzarad**. بگذرد is the subjunctive form of گذشتن **gozashtan** ("to pass") = خوش بگذره, *khosh begzareh*. This literally means "I wish that time passes well for you," "have fun," or "have a ball" in English.

In an informal context, it could be translated to "have fun."

On a plane or at a hotel, you might hear اقامت خوشی داشته باشید (*eghaamat-e khoshi daashteh baashin*), which means "have a nice/pleasant stay."

For example:

1. دیزنی لند خوش بگذره!
dizni land khosh begzareh!
"Have fun at Disneyland!"

چه مدت

ch eh mod-dat

"how long?"

If we break down this phrase, we get چه (*ch eh*) "how?" + مدت (*mod-dat*), "time, duration, period."

Ch eh mod-dat is formal. To ask about the duration of time informally, you can use *chan vakht* (colloquial form of *chand vaght* where the *gh* sound changes to *kh*). For example, instead of چه مدت است که به یادگیری زبان فارسی مشغول هستید؟ (*ch eh mod-dat ast keh beh yaad giri-ye zabaan-e faarsi mashghool hastid*) which is very formal and means "How long have you been engaged in learning Persian?" you can say چن وقته که دارین فارسی یاد می گیرین؟ (*chan vakhteh keh daarin faarsi yaad migirin?*), "How long have you been learning Persian?"

For example:

1. چه مدت تو (در) آلمان می میمونین (می مانید)؟
ch eh mod-dat too (dar) aalmaan mimoonin (mimaanid)?
"How long will you stay in Germany?"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Suffix for the Second Person: *id*, *id*

سلام روز بخیر به ایران خوش آمدید.

salaam rooz bekheyr be 'iraan khosh oomadin (aamadid).

"Hello, good day, welcome to Iran."

In this lesson, we will learn about:

1. The suffix *ید*, *id* and its usages

1. The suffix *ید*, *id* and its usages

The suffix *ید*, *id*, is the personal ending for the second person plural. As you already know, when you add these pronoun personal endings to nouns and adjectives, they are the conjugation of the verb "to be." So *ید*, *id* means "are" here.

When you use verb endings for second and third person plural to talk to or about one individual, you are being polite and using honorific Persian. It is common to use this language to talk to older people, strangers, customers, and teachers.

1. شما پرستارید؟
shomaa parastaarid?
"Are you a nurse?" [second person singular - honorific form]
2. شما پرستارید؟
shomaa parastaarid?
"Are you nurses?" [second person plural]

In daily speeches and spoken language, you can change the *-id* to *-in*. And while you can keep as it is (*-id*), *-in* sounds much easier to pronounce.

1. خوبین شما؟
khoobin shomaa?
"You OK?" [second person singular honorific or second person plural]
2. خوبی تو؟
khoobi to?
"You OK?" [another way of asking how someone is]

Persian	Romanization	English
(خوابیدین) خوابیدید	<i>khaabidid (khaabidin)</i>	"You slept"
(خرید میرین) می روید	<i>kharid mirin (miravid)</i>	"You go shopping"
(سؤال می پرسین) می پرسید	<i>so'aal miporsin (miporsid)</i>	"You ask questions"
(جواب می دین) می دهید	<i>javaab midin (mi dahid)</i>	"You answer," "you respond"
(می گیرین) می گیرید	<i>migirin (migirid)</i>	"You get," "you receive"
(اومدین) آمدید	<i>oomadin (aamadin/aamadid)</i>	"You came"

In the case of *اومدین* / *آمدید* (*oomadin (aamadin/aamadid)*), you have a choice. You can either say *aamadin* or *aamadid*, which may sound slightly formal, but in some dialects it's not considered formal.

Sample sentences

1. به اسپانیا خوش آمدید.
be espaaniyaa khosh aamadid.

"Welcome to Spain."

2. اینو (این را) ببرین (ببرید) اتاق ۲۰۳.
ino (in raa) bebarin (bebarin) otaaq-e divist (devist) -o se.
"Take this to room 203."
3. چی میگین (چه می گوئید)؟ wall تو (در) فارسی به
too faarsi be "wall" chi migin (che migoo'id)?
"What do you call "wall" in Persian?"

Examples from the Dialogue

1. بفرمائید!
bafarmaa'id!
"Here you are."
2. چه مدت در ایران می مونید (می مانید)؟
che moddat dar Iraan mimoonid (mimaanid)?
"How long are you going to stay in Iran?"

Sample Sentences

1. امشب برمیدین (برمیگردید)؟
emshab barmigardin (barmigardid)?
"Will you go back tonight?"
2. فردا میرین (می روید)؟
fardaa mirin (miravid)?
"Will you go tomorrow?"
3. دیروز خریدینش (خریدیدش)؟
dirooz kharidinesh (kharididesh)?
"Did you buy it yesterday?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Tehran Imam Khomeini International Airport

The main international airport of Iran is Imam Khomeini International Airport (IKA). It is located southwest of Tehran. It was designed in order to replace Mehrabad International Airport which was once the only traditional airport in Iran.

You can drive to the airport or take a taxi. Passengers can also take the subway there soon; it is under construction. You can fly to several countries in Asia and Europe from IKA. All domestic flights in and out of Tehran are currently served by Mehrabad Airport, which is located in the west of Tehran. In October 2015, some hotels opened on the airport premises.

Useful expression

1. پروازهای داخلی و خارجی
parvaaz haay-e daakheli and khaareji
"Domestic and international flights"

Khaareji means "foreign" or "foreigner." Here it is in contrast to "domestic" and can be translated as "international."

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #20

Talking About Vacation Plans in Persian

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#20

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. هدی : امسال تابستون (تابستان) مرخصی می گیری؟
2. فرهاد : احتمالاً، می خوام (می خواهم) برم (بروم) ارمنستان.
3. هدی : من می خوام (می خواهم) به (یک) هفته اواخر تابستون (تابستان) برم (بروم) شیراز.
4. فرهاد : من تو شیراز یک هتل خوب می شناسم.
5. هدی : واقعاً؟ می تونی (می توانی) برام (برایم) تخفیف بگیری؟
6. فرهاد : آره صاحب هتل آشنای خانوادگی ماست (ما است). دقیقاً کی می خوای (می خواهی) بری (بروی)؟
7. هدی : هنوز نمی دونم (نمی دانم).
8. فرهاد : وقتی تاریخش مشخص شد به من خبر بده.
9. هدی : تو شیراز می خوام (می خواهم) هر روز کلم پلو بخورم.
10. فرهاد : خوبه (خوب است) که فقط به (یک) هفته می مونی (می مانی).

ROMANIZATION

1. Hodaa : emsaal taabestoon (taabestaan) morakhasi migiri?
2. Farhaad : ehtemaalan, mikhaam (mikhaaham) beram (beravam) armanestaan.
3. Hodaa : man mikhaam (mikhaaham) ye (yek) hafte avaakher-e taabestoon (taabestaan) beram (beravam) Shiraaz.
4. Farhaad : man too Shiraaz yek hotel-e khoob mishnaasam.
5. Hodaa : vaaqe'an? mitooni (mitavaani) baraam (baraayam) takhfif begiri?
6. Farhaad : aare saaheb-e hotel aashnaa-ye maast (maa ast). daqiqan key mikhaay (mikhaahi) beri (beravi)?
7. Hodaa : hanooz nemidoonam (nemidaanam).
8. Farhaad : vaqti taarikhash moshakhhkhas shod be man khabar bede.
9. Hodaa : too Shiraaz mikhaam (mikhaaham) har rooz kalam-polo bekhoram.
10. Farhaad : khoobe (khoob ast) ke faqat yek hafte mimooni (mimaani).

ENGLISH

1. Hoda : Will you take days off this summer?
2. Farhad : Probably, I want to go to Armenia.
3. Hoda : I want to go to Shiraz for a week in late summer.
4. Farhad : I know a good hotel in Shiraz.
5. Hoda : Really? Can you get me a discount too?
6. Farhad : Yeah, the owner is a family acquaintance. When are you going exactly?
7. Hoda : I don't know yet.
8. Farhad : When the date is set, let me know.
9. Hoda : In Shiraz, I'd like to eat Kalam polo every day.
10. Farhad : It's good that you're staying just one week.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
مرخصی گرفتن	morakhasi gereftan	to take (a) day(s) off	verb
اواخر	avaakher	late	noun, adjective
تاریخ	taarikh	date	noun
فقط	faqat	just	adverb
صاحب	saaheb	owner	noun
مشخص کردن/ تعیین کردن	moshakhkhas kardan/ ta'in kardan	to set (a date)	verb
تخفیف	takhfif	discount	noun
به کسی خبر دادن	be kasi khabar daadan	to let someone know	verb phrase
آشنای خانوادگی	aashnaa-ye khaanevaadegi	family acquaintance	phrase
دقیقاً	daqiqan	exactly	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>فردا رو (را) مرخصی گرفته (گرفته است)!</p> <p><i>fardaa ro (raa) morakhasi gerefte (gerefte ast)!</i></p> <p>She (he) has taken tomorrow off!</p>	<p>اواخر فوریه میاد (می آید).</p> <p><i>avaakher-e fevriye miyaad (mi-aayad).</i></p> <p>He's coming in late February.</p>
---	--

<p>تاریخ ساز شدیم.</p> <p><i>taarikh saaz shodim.</i></p> <p>We made history.</p>	<p>فقط دو روز وقت دارم.</p> <p><i>faqat do rooz vaqt daaram.</i></p> <p>I only have two days.</p>
<p>صاحب این سگ رو (سگ را) میشناسین (می‌شناسید)؟</p> <p><i>saaheb-e in sag ro (sag raa) mishnaasin (mishenaasid)?</i></p> <p>Do you know the owner of this dog?</p>	<p>هنوز تاریخ عروسیو (عروسی را) مشخص نکردیم.</p> <p><i>hanooz taarkh-e aroosi ro (aroosi raa) moshakhkhas nakardim.</i></p> <p>We haven't set a date for the wedding.</p>
<p>لطفاً به ما تخفیف بدین (بدهید)!</p> <p><i>lotfan be maa takhfif bedin (bedahid)!</i></p> <p>Give us a discount please!</p>	<p>باید به مامان خبر بدم که دارم میرم.</p> <p><i>baayad be maamaan khabar bedam ke daaram miram.</i></p> <p>I have to let Mom know that I'm going.</p>
<p>آنها آشنایان خانوادگی زیادی دارند.</p> <p><i>aanhaa aashnaayaan-e khaanevadegi-ye ziyaadi daarand.</i></p> <p>They have many family acquaintances.</p>	<p>دقیقاً چی گفت؟</p> <p><i>daqiqan chi (che chizi) goft?</i></p> <p>What did he (she) say exactly?</p>
<p>دقیقاً کجا خواهید رفت؟</p> <p><i>daqiqan kojaa khaahid raft?</i></p> <p>Where are you going exactly?</p>	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

اواخر

avaakher

"late, lately, recently"

If you look this word up in a Persian dictionary, you see that **اواخر (avaakher)** is the plural of the noun **آخر (aakhar)**, "end," while **اخیر (akhir)** means "late, recent." You could find *avaakher* meaning "late" in the common phrase **اواخر عمر (avaakher-e omr)**, meaning "late in life." For example, **بتیهورن اواخر عمرش (bethoven avaakher-e omrash naashenavaa bood)** means "Beethoven was deaf late in his life."

Avaakher is a bit formal, so to mean "lately," you can use **این اواخر (in avaakher)** to sound informal.

Here are other examples: **آخر کلاس نمره ها رو (ra) اعلام میکنم (aakhar-e kelaas nomrehaa ro (raa) e'laam mikonam)** - "I'll announce the grades at the end of the class." Or, **کارهای اخیر این هنرمند کیفیت خوبی ندارد (kaarhaaye akhir-e in honarmand keifiyat-e khoobi nadaarand)** - "This artist's recent works are not good quality."

For example:

1. این پرندگان اواخر فروردین مهاجرت می کنند.

in paraandeh haa avaakher-e fardvarin mohaajerat mikonand.

"These birds migrate in late Fardvarin (period between March 21st and April 21st)."

مشخص کردن / تعیین کردن تاریخ

moshakh-khas kardan/ ta'in kardan

"to set (a date)"

Moshakh-khas means "specified," *mo'ay-yan*, "fixed," "given," "determined," and *kardan*, "to do". You can add تاریخ, *taarikh*, meaning "date, history" to mean "to fix a date, to set a date."

One of the most common applications of this phrase is in the phrase تعیین کردن تاریخ عروسی, *ta'in kardan-e taarikh-e aroosi*, ("to set a wedding date")

For example:

- هنوز تاریخ عروسیو (عروسی را) مشخص نکردیم.
hanooz taarkh-e aroosi-yo (aroori raa) moshakh-khas nakardim.
"We haven't set a date for the wedding."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Stating a Desire: "I want"+ Object

احتمالاً، می‌خوام (می‌خواهم) برم (بروم) ارمنستان.
ehtemaalan, mikhaam (mikhaaham) beram (beravam) armanestaan.
"Probably, I want to go Armenia."

In this lesson, we will learn how to use:

1. The verb "to want" followed by an object

1. The verb "to want" followed by an object

To express your desire to have something or do something, you can use the verb خواستن (*khaastan*), meaning "to want" or "would like." Both خواستن (*khaastan*) and the main verb are conjugated for all persons. The main verb is in the present subjunctive form.

You can use this structure to express any wants or desires, from everyday, simple ones to your aim and goals in life. Here are some examples and applications of the verb خواستن, *khaastan*, "to want" in Persian:

- می‌خوام (می‌خواهم) ازدواج کنم.
mikhaam (mikhaaham) ezdevaaj konam.
"I want to get married."
- می‌خواهی بروی خارج؟
mikhaay beri (mikhaahi beravi) khaarej?
"Do you want to go abroad?"
- (می‌خواهد) روانشناسی بخونه (بخواند).
mikhaad (mikhaahad) ravaanshenaasi bekhooned (bekhaanad).
"She/he wants to major in psychology."
- می‌خواهیم (می‌خواهیم) کلوچه بپزیم.
mikhaaym (mikhaahim) kolooche bepazim.
"We want to bake cookies."
- می‌خواهید براتون قصه تعریف کنم؟
mikhaayn (mikhaahid) baraatoon qesse ta'rif konam?

"Would you like me to tell you a story?"

6. می خوان خونشونو اجاره بدن. (می خواهند خانه اشان را اجاره بدهند.)

mikhaan khoonashoon-o ejaare bedan (mikhaahand khaane-shaan raa ejaare bedahand.)

"They want to rent out their house."

Written form of the verb phrase "to want to go"

Persian	Romanization	English
می خواهم بروم	<i>mikhaaham beravam</i>	I want / I'd like to go
می خواهی بروی	<i>mikhaahi beravi</i>	You want / You'd like to go
می خواهد برود	<i>mikhaahad beravad</i>	She/he/it wants / would like to go
می خواهیم برویم	<i>mikhaahim beravim</i>	We want / We'd like to go
می خواهید بروید	<i>mikhaahid beravid</i>	You want / You'd like to go
می خواهند بروند	<i>mikhaahand beravand</i>	They want / They'd like to go

Spoken form of the verb phrase "to want to go"

Persian	Romanization	English
می خوام برم	<i>mikhaam beram</i>	I want / I'd like to go
می خوای بری	<i>mikhaay beri</i>	You want / You'd like to go
می خواد بره	<i>mikhaad bere</i>	She/he/it wants / would like to go
می خوایم بریم	<i>mikhaaym berim</i>	We want / We'd like to go
می خواید برید (می خواین برین)	<i>mikhaayd berid (mikhaayn berin)</i>	You want / You'd like to go
می خوان برن	<i>mikhaan beran</i>	They want / They'd like to go

As in English, it is considered polite to use the past tense for requests. And the past tense of the verb خواستن (*khaastan*), "wanted," can be translated to "would like to" in English, depending on the context.

Written form of the verb phrase "wanted to see"

Persian	Romanization	English
می خواستم ببینم	<i>mikhaastam bebinam</i>	I wanted to/would like to see
می خواستی ببینی	<i>mikhaasti bebini</i>	You wanted to/would like to see
می خواست ببیند	<i>mikhaast bebinad</i>	She/he/it wanted to/would like to see
می خواستیم ببینیم	<i>mikhaastim bebinim</i>	We wanted to/would like to see
می خواستید ببینید	<i>mikhaastid bebinid</i>	You wanted to/would like to see
می خواستند ببینند	<i>mikhaastand bebinand</i>	They wanted to/would like to see

Spoken form of the verb phrase "would like/wanted to see"

Persian	Romanization	English
می خواستم ببینم	<i>mikhaastam bebinam</i>	I wanted to/would like to see
می خواستی ببینی	<i>mikhaasti bebini</i>	You wanted to/would like to see
می خواست ببینه	<i>mikhaast bebine</i>	She/he/it wanted to/would like to see
می خواستیم ببینیم	<i>mikhaastim bebinim</i>	We wanted to/would like to see
می خواستین ببینین	<i>mikhaastin bebinin</i>	You wanted to/would like to see
می خواستن ببینن	<i>mikhaastan bebinan</i>	They wanted to/would like to see

As you see, the spoken and written form don't change for first person singular and second person singular and plural.

1. یه (یک) ماشین میخواستم برای فرودگاه.
ye (yek) maashin mikhaastam baraaye foroodgaah.
"I'd like a taxi for the airport."
2. میخواست ببینه میتونه بره (ببیند می تواند برود) ملاقات.
mikhaast bebine mitoone bere (bebinad mitavaanad beravad) molaqaat.
"She/he wanted to see if he could go visit." [at a hospital, visiting a sick person]

Sample sentences

1. (می خوام بمونم) می خواهم بمانم.
mikhaam bemoonam (mikhaaham bemaanam).
"I want to stay."
2. (می خوان این کتاب رو بخونن) می خواهند این کتاب را بخوانند.
mikhaan in ketaab ro bekhoonan. (mikhaahand in ketaab raa bekhaanand.)
"They want to read this book."
3. (می خواد با تو صحبت کنه) می خواهد با تو صحبت کند.
mikhaad baa to sohbat kone. (mikhaahad baa to sohbat konad.)
"She/he wants/would like to talk to you."

Examples from the Dialogue

1. من می‌خوام (می‌خواهم) یه (یک) هفته اواخر تابستون (تابستان) برم (بروم) شیراز.
man mikhaam (mikhaaham) ye (yek) hafte avakher-e taabestoon (taabestaan) beram (beravam) Shiraz.
"I want to go to Shiraz for a week in late summer."
2. تو شیراز می‌خوام (می‌خواهم) هر روز کلم پلو بخورم.
too Shiraz mikhaam (mikhaaham) har rooz kalam-polo bokhoram.
"In Shiraz, I'd like to eat Kalam polo every day."

Sample Sentences

1. (می‌خوام برم (می‌خواهم بروم).
mikhaam beram (mikhaaham beravam).
"I want to go."
2. (می‌خوام برم (می‌خواهم بروم) ولی نمیتونم (نمی‌توانم).
mikhaam beram (mikhaaham beravam) vali nemitoonam (nemitavaabam).
"I'd like to go but I can't."
3. می‌خوام برات یه (می‌خواهم برایت یک) هدیه خوب بخرم.
mikhaam baraat ye (mikhaaham baraayat yek) hedye-ye khoob bekharom.
"I want to buy you a good gift."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Summer vacation resorts

Schools are closed for three months in summer, so it's the best time for families to take a break and go somewhere nice with a cooler climate. Some may leave the capital city, Tehran, and go back to their hometowns and visit their relatives, or vice-versa; their relatives may come visit them in Tehran. Some people go to Iran's neighboring countries, like Turkey, Armenia, or UAE. Some with a higher budget travel around Europe.

The most-visited places in Iran are some major cities in the North, like Rasht, Ramsar, Sari, some big ones, such as Tabriz, Shiraz (with lots of world heritage sites), Mashhad (a holy city which attracts pilgrims from Shia Muslim countries), and Kish Island (a free trade zone).

Useful expression

1. تعطیلات تابستانی.

ta'tilaat-e tabestaani

"summer vacation," "summer break"

Ta'til can function as a noun and an adjective. As a noun, it means "a holiday" - for example, روز تعطیل (*rooz-e ta'tile*), "a holiday." As an adjective, it is translated to "closed" - for example, مغازه تعطیل است (*maghaaze ta'til ast*) "The shop is closed."

It's an Arabic word. In Arabic, a plural noun is marked by *aat*. تعطیلات refers to a period of long holidays or breaks from work and school.

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #21

Finding a Balance Between Work and Life in Iran

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Persian
 - Main
 - Romanization
 - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#21

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. خانم میلانی : این اواخر رئیس عصبانی به نظر میاد (می آید).
2. آقای احمدی : از فروش امسال ناراضیه (ناراضی است).
3. خانم میلانی : بیچاره منشیاش (منشی اش) خیلی استرس داره (دارد).
4. آقای احمدی : منم (من هم) خسته شدم از این جلساتی که تا ده شب طول میکشه (می کشد).
5. خانم میلانی : از فردا منم (من هم) باید تو جلسات شرکت کنم.
6. آقای احمدی : می دونستید شرکت کردن در جلسه اضافه کار حساب نمیشه (نمی شود)؟
7. خانم میلانی : کسی هم اعتراض نکرده (نکرده است)؟
8. آقای احمدی : کسی جرات نمی کنه (نمی کند) حرف بزنه (بزند) همه از رئیس می ترسن (می ترسند).
9. خانم میلانی : من امروز میرم (می روم) با رئیس حرف می زنم.
10. آقای احمدی : امروز نه! امروز اصلاً تو حالت خوبی نیست.

ROMANIZATION

1. Khanom-e Milaani : in avaaqher ra'is asabaani be nazar miyaad (miaayad).
2. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : az foroosh-e emsaal naaraaziye (naaraazi ast).
3. Khanom-e Milaani : bichaare monshish (monshi-ash) kheyli esteres daare (daarad).
4. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : manam (man ham) khaste shodam az in jalasaati ke taa dah-e shab tool mikeshe (mikeshad).
5. Khanom-e Milaani : az fardaa manam (man ham) baayad too jalasaat sherkat konam.
6. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : midoonestid sherkat kardan dar jalase ezaafe kaar hesaab nemishe (nemishavad)?
7. Khanom-e Milaani : kasi ham e'teraaz nakarde (nakarde ast)?
8. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : kasi jor'at nemikone (nemikonad) harf bezane (bezanad) hame az ra'is mitarsan (mitarsand).
9. Khanom-e Milaani : man emrooz miram (miravam) baa ra'is harf mizanam.
10. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : emrooz na! emrooz aslan too haalat-e khoobi nist.

ENGLISH

1. Mrs. Milani : Lately the boss has been looking angry.
2. Mr. Ahmadi : He's unhappy with this year's sales.
3. Mrs. Milani : His poor secretary... she has lots of stress.
4. Mr. Ahmadi : I'm tired of these meetings that last till ten p.m.
5. Mrs. Milani : From tomorrow, I have to attend the meetings too.
6. Mr. Ahmadi : Did you know that participation in the meetings is not counted as overtime?
7. Mrs. Milani : And no one has objected either?
8. Mr. Ahmadi : Nobody dares to speak up. Everybody is scared of the boss.
9. Mrs. Milani : I'll go talk to him today.
10. Mr. Ahmadi : Not today! Today, he's not in a good mood at all.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
در حالت روحی خوبی نبودن / حالت روحی خوبی نداشتن	dar haal-e roohi-ye khoobi nabooodan/ haalat-e roohi-ye khoobi nadaashtan	to be not in a good mood	verb phrase
ناراضی	naa raazi	unhappy	adjective
اضافه کار	ezaafekaar	overtime	compound noun
اعتراض کردن	e'teraaz kardan	to object	verb
خسته شدن	khaste shodan	to get (sick and) tired	verb phrase
طول کشیدن	tool keshidan	to last	verb
رئیس	ra'is	boss	noun
جرات کردن	jor'at kardan	to dare	verb
از کسی ترسیدن	az kasi tarsidan	to be scared of someone	verb phrase
بیچاره	bichaare	poor	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>از کارش ناراضیه.</p> <p><i>az kaaresh naaraaziye.</i></p> <p>He's not happy with his work.</p>	<p>تو مود (در حالت روحی) خوبی نیستی.</p> <p><i>too mood-e (dar haalat-e roohi-ye) khoobi nistam.</i></p> <p>I'm not in a good mood.</p>
<p>معلمان به کم بودن حقوقشان اعتراض می کنند.</p> <p><i>mo'allemaan be kam boodan-e hoqooqeshaan e'teraaz mikonand.</i></p> <p>Teachers protest against low salary.</p>	<p>اضافه کار وایمیستی؟</p> <p><i>ezaafekaar vaaymisti?</i></p> <p>Will you do overtime?</p>
<p>این کلاس چقدر طول میکشه (می کشد)؟</p> <p><i>in kelaas cheqadr tool mikesh?</i></p> <p>How long does the class last?</p>	<p>از شلختگیش خسته شدم.</p> <p><i>az shelakhtegish khasteh shodam.</i></p> <p>I'm sick and tired of his sloppiness.</p>
<p>بعد از دیدن پنجمین رئیس، حالا به الگو تو رفتارشون می بینم.</p> <p><i>ba'd az didan-e panjomin ra'isam, haalaa ye olgoo too raftaareshoon mibinam.</i></p> <p>After meeting my fifth boss, I now see a pattern in their conduct.</p>	<p>با رئیس حرف بز.</p> <p><i>baa ra'is harf bezan.</i></p> <p>Talk to the boss.</p>
<p>جرات نمیکنم مخالفت کنم.</p> <p><i>jor'at nemikonam mokhaalefat konam.</i></p> <p>I don't dare to disagree.</p>	<p>رئیس ما اجازه کار در خارج از زمان کاری بدون دریافت پول را میدهد.</p> <p><i>ra'is-e maa ejaaze-ye kaar dar khaarej az zamaan-e kaari bedoon daryaaft pool raa midahad.</i></p> <p>Our boss lets us work unpaid overtime.</p>
<p>بچه بیچاره!</p> <p><i>bachche-ye bichaare!</i></p> <p>Poor baby!</p>	<p>از صاحب خونه اش میترسه (می ترسد).</p> <p><i>az saaheb khoonash mitarse (mitarsad).</i></p> <p>She's scared of her landlord (or landlady).</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

بیچاره
bichaareh
 "poor"

Bi (بی) means "without" and **chaareh** (چاره) means "remedy or solution." So بیچاره literally means "someone who is in trouble and has no solution."

Ey bichaareh (ای بیچاره) meaning "Oh, you poor thing," or **pesar-e bichaareh** (پسر بیچاره) meaning "poor boy," shows your pity for someone.

You can use it for yourself and others, but saying it directly to someone doesn't sound good. And it really depends on your tone of voice and intention.

For example,

1. دل بیچاره من.
"My poor heart!"
del-e bichaare-ye man!

خسته شدن
khasteh shodan
"to get (sick and) tired"

Khaste (خسته), meaning "tired," plus ***shodan*** (شدن), "to become, to get," makes ***khasteh shodan*** (خسته شدن), which means "to get sick and tired," "to become tired," "to be fed up with."

Just like in English, and depending on the context, it means either to become physically tired or mentally exhausted.

For example,

1. از دروغاش (دروغ هایش) خسته شدم.
"I'm sick and tired of his/her lies."
az doorooghaash (doroogh haa yash) khasteh shodam.

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is expressing emotions

(از فروش امسال ناراضیه (ناراضی است.
az foroosh-e emsaal naaraaziye (naaraazi ast).
"He's unhappy with this year's sales."

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

- 1. Describing negative emotions**
 - 2. Describing positive emotions**
-

1. Describing negative emotions

Sometimes, it seems very easy to express emotions in other languages. Just memorize some words and structures and you're there. But you should always consider cultural differences when it comes to words and phrases regarding your emotions. Honesty and being transparent may sometimes be read as being naive, gullible, or even rough. Being reserved and shy might be taken as being unfriendly or rude. It takes time to observe and study the target culture to be able to communicate well and effectively. Sometimes, you need to suppress an emotion. Sometimes, you must rethink your word choice in order to not hurt the listener.

Feshaar (فشار) means "stress" or "pressure." فشار عصبی (**feshaar-e asabi**) means "stress." You can use the word استرس (**esteres**) too. It's quite common now. It's a loanword from English with a different pronunciation.

The easiest way to tell someone about your emotions is to use the adjective that best describes your emotions plus the verb بودن (**boodan**) "to be," or شدن (**shodan**) "to get" or "to become," conjugated correctly for tense and person.

Here are some examples.

1. من عصبانیم.
man asabaaniyam.
"I'm angry."
2. تو از دست خواهرت عصبانی هستی.
to az dast-e khaaharet asabaani hasti.
"You are angry with your sister."
3. خجالت زده شدیم.
khejaalat zade shodim.
"We were embarrassed."

English	Romanization	Persian
"worried"	<i>negaraan</i>	نگران
"horrified, terrified"	<i>vahshat zade</i>	وحشت زده
"confused"	<i>gij</i>	گیج
"upset"	<i>naaraahat</i>	ناراحت
"sad"	<i>ghamgin</i>	غمگین
"hopeless"	<i>naa امید</i>	ناامید

Sample sentences

1. (بیش مشکوکم (به او مشکوک هستم).
behesh mashkookam. (be oo mashkook hastam.)
"I'm suspicious of her/him."
2. (شوهرم خیلی استرس داره (دارد).
shoharam kheyli esteris daare (daarad).
"My husband is very stressed out."
3. (نگران دخترمم (دخترم هستم).
negaraan-e dokhtaram-am (dokhtaram hastam).
"I'm concerned about my daughter."

2. Describing positive emotions

Happy and positive feelings are usually easier to express. For this, we still use adjectives added to the verb بودن (*boodan*) "to be."

English	Romanization	Persian
"happy"	<i>khoshhaal</i>	خوشحال
"calm"	<i>aaraam</i>	آرام
"fortunate"	<i>khoshbakht</i>	خوشبخت
"happy, content, satisfied"	<i>raazi</i>	راضی
"eager, enthusiastic"	<i>moshtaagh</i>	مشتاق
"in love"	<i>aashegh</i>	عاشق
"happy, glad, cheerful"	<i>shaad</i>	شاد
"excited"	<i>hayajaan zade</i>	هیجان زده

Sample sentences

1. من شادم.
man shaadam.
"I'm happy."
2. مریم هیجان زده است.
maryam hayajaan-zade ast.
"Maryam is excited."
3. از کارم راضیم.
az kaaram raaziyam.
"I'm happy with my job."

Examples from the dialogue

1. (کسی جرات نمی‌کنه (نمی‌کند) حرف بزنه (بزند) همه از رئیس می‌ترسن (می‌ترسند).
kasi jor'at nemikone (nemikonad) harf bezane (bezanad) hame az ra'is mitarsan (mitarsand).
"Nobody dares to talk. Everybody is scared of the boss."
2. (بیچاره منشی‌اش (منشی‌اش) خیلی استرس داره (دارد).
bichaare monshish (monshi-ash) kheyli esteress daare (daarad).
"His poor secretary... she has lots of stress."

Sample Sentences

1. (این روزا (روزها) خیلی ناراحته (ناراحت است).
in roozaa (rooz haa) kheyli naaraahate (naaraahat ast).
"She/he is very upset these days."
2. از باباش (بابایش) می‌ترسید.
az baabaash (baabaa yash) mitarsid.
"She/he was scared of her/his dad."

3. من عاشق بهارم.
man aa'shegh-e bahaaram.
"I love spring."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Dealing with stress from work in Iran

Working makes stress accumulate. In Iran, many women and some men take yoga and pilates classes in their free time. Some hike or go for long walks in parks. There are some morning exercises done by groups in parks too. Some hit the swimming pool. Golf and tennis are popular among upper-class families.

Useful expression

1. ورزش صبحگاهی.
varzesh-e sobhgaahi
"morning workout (exercises)"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #22

What Are You Craving in Iran?

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#22

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. جرج : گرسنه نیستی؟
2. فریبا : چرا، دارم از گشنگی می‌میرم.
3. جرج : اون (آن) رستوران معروف خیلی دوره؟
4. فریبا : نه، اتفاقاً نزدیکه (نزدیک است).
5. جرج : جوجه کباب هم دارن (دارند)؟
6. فریبا : آره ولی امروز من هوس ماهی کردم.
7. جرج : خیلی گرونه (گران است)؟
8. فریبا : نه، قیمتاش (قیمت هایش) مناسبه (مناسب است).

ROMANIZATION

1. Jorj : gorosne nisti?
2. Faribaa : cheraa, daaram az goshnegi mimiram.
3. Jorj : oon (aan) restooraan-e ma'roof kheyli doore?
4. Faribaa : na, etefaaghan nazdike (nazdik ast).
5. Jorj : jooje kabaab ham daaran (daarand)?
6. Faribaa : aare vali emrooz havas-e maahi kardam.
7. Jorj : kheyli geroone (geraan ast)?
8. Faribaa : na, gheymataash (gheymat-haa-yash) monaasebe (monaaseb ast).

ENGLISH

1. George : Aren't you hungry?
2. Fariba : Yeah, I'm starving to death.
3. George : Is that famous restaurant too far?
4. Fariba : No, it happens to be close!
5. George : Do they have chicken kebab?
6. Fariba : Yeah, but I have a craving for fish today.
7. George : Is it very expensive?
8. Fariba : No, the prices are reasonable.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
	دور door	far	adverb
	جوجه کباب jooje kabaab	Barbecue (BBQ) chicken	noun
	خیلی kheyli	a lot	adjective
	چرا cheraa	yeah, why	interjection, interrogative word
	عالی aali	great	adjective
	ماهی maahi	fish	noun
	معروف ma'roof	famous	adjective
	اتفاقاً ettefaaqan	to happen	adverb
	هوس کردن havas kardan	to have a craving (for something)	verb
	از گشنگی (گرسنگی) از گشنگی (گرسنگی) az goshnegi مردن mordan	to starve to death	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

مدرسه سینا از خونه (خانه) دوره (دور است). <i>madrese-ye sinaa az khoone (khaane) doore (door ast).</i> Sina's school is far from home.	نمی‌توانم آن را ببینم، خیلی دور است. <i>nemitavaanam aan raa bebinam, kheyli door ast.</i> I can't see it, it's too far away.
--	---

<p>شام جوجه کباب داریم. <i>shaam jooje kabaab daarim.</i> We have BBQ chicken for dinner.</p>	<p>خیلی دوستش (دوستش) دارم. <i>kheyli doosesh (doostash) daaram.</i> I like him (her,it) very much.</p>
<p>چرا عصبانی شد؟ <i>cheraa asabaani shod?</i> Why did he get mad?</p>	<p>دست خطت عالی (دست خط تو عالی است). <i>dast khattet aaliye (das khatte to aaliye).</i> Your handwriting is great.</p>
<p>ماهی یک منبع غذایی مهم برای مردم است. <i>maahi yek manba'e qazaai-e mohem baraaye mardom ast.</i> Fish is an important food source for people.</p>	<p>مردم ژاپن خیلی ماهی می خورند. <i>mardom-e zhaapon kheili maahi mikhorand.</i> Japanese people eat a lot of fish.</p>
<p>ماهی خام <i>maahi-e khaam</i> raw fish</p>	<p>غذای اصلی امشب ماهی کبابی است. <i>qazaaye asli-e emshab maahi-e kabaabi ast.</i> Tonight's main course is grilled fish.</p>
<p>قزل آلا یک نوع ماهی است. <i>ghezel aalaa yek no' maahi ast.</i> Trout is a kind of fish.</p>	<p>این آهنگ معروفیه (معروفی است). <i>in aahang-e ma'roofiye.</i> This is a famous song.</p>
<p>اتفاقاً داره میاد (می آید). <i>ettefaaqan daare miyaad.</i> She (he, it) happens to come.</p>	<p>هوس باقلوا کردم. <i>havas-e baaqlavaa kardam.</i> I've got a craving for baklava.</p>
<p>دارم از گشنگی (گرسنگی) می میرم. <i>daaram az gorosnegi mimram.</i> I'm starving to death.</p>	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

چرا

cheraa

"Why?", "Yeah!"

This is usually an interrogative word, but when you use it to respond to a negative question and without a rising intonation like in normal questions, it means "yes" or "yeah." It is used in informal settings.

For example:

1. (چرا! داریم میریم (میریم)).

cheraa! daarim mirim (miravim).

"Yeah, we are going!" (answer to "Aren't you going?")

از گشنگی مردن

az goshnegi mordan

"to starve to death, to die of starvation (hunger)"

This phrase is made of از (*az*) meaning "from" or "of," گشنگی (*goshnegi*), which is the colloquial form of گرسنگی (*gorosnegi*) and means "hunger," and مردن (*mordan*) which means "to die." Like in English, it's a kind of informal exaggeration.

For example:

1. داریم از گشنگی میمیریم.
daarim az goshnegi mimirim.
"We're starving to death."

هوس چیزی کردن

havas-e chizi kardan

"to crave something"

This phrase is made of هوس (*havas*) meaning "craving" or "lust," چیزی (*chizi*) meaning "something," and کردن (*kardan*) which is "to do," or "to carry out."

It's an informal phrase, so you should avoid it when talking to strangers or a professor.

For example:

1. هوس یه (یک) چیز ترش کردم.
havas-e yeh (yek) chiz-e torsh kardam.
"I'm craving something sour."

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Tanvin **ل**: Adverbial Ending

(نه، اتفاقاً نزدیکه (نزدیک است).
na, etefaaghan nazdike (nazdik ast).
"No it happens to be close!"

In this lesson, we will learn how to use

1. The Adverbial Ending *Tanvin ل*

1. The Adverbial Ending *Tanvin ل*

Tanvin is an originally adverbial ending and is exclusive to Arabic loanwords. Although it is written as **آ** in Arabic texts, the little sign you see on top of **ا** is almost always omitted in informal writing. It's pronounced *an*. In recent years, people have started using **ن** (Persian letter for the *n* sound) instead of **ا** for some words, especially when texting. However, its pronunciation does not change. It's also approved by Iran's Academy of Persian Language and Literature. Here are some examples:

1. جداً
jeddān
"seriously"
2. واقعاً
vaaghe'an
"Really," or "indeed"
3. حقیقتاً
haghighatan
"truly"

There are more examples in the below table with their common written forms in Persian.

Persian	Romanization	English
مثلاً	<i>masalan</i>	"for example"
غالباً	<i>ghaaleban</i>	"often, frequently"
اکثراً	<i>aksaran</i>	"mostly"
نسبتاً	<i>nesbatan</i>	"rather, relatively"
ابداً	<i>abadan</i>	"anyway"
اصلاً	<i>aslan</i>	"not at all"

There is a common mistake among some Iranians regarding the usage of the tanvin with Persian words. You might hear people say دوماً (*dov-voman*). They mean "secondly," but it's wrong. The correct word is ثانياً (*saani-yan*).

The same thing goes with سوماً (*sewoman*). The right word is ثالثاً (*saalesan*) meaning "thirdly." Some more examples are -

1. اولاً
avvalan
"firstly"
2. رابعاً
raabe'an
"fourthly"
3. خامساً
khaamesan
"fifthly"

Another point to keep in mind and practice when learning Persian is geminated sounds in pronouncing loanwords from Arabic. They are shown as double consonant in the romanizations of those words, as in **av-valan** ("firstly") and **jed-dan** ("really").

1. جداً می‌خواهی (می‌خواهی) استعفا بدهی؟
Jeddan mikhaay (mikhaahi) est'faa bedi (bedahi)?
"Are you really going to resign?"
2. شدیداً به استراحت نیاز دارم.
shadidan be esteraahat niyaaz daaram.
"I desperately need a rest."
3. کاملاً با سارا مخالفم (مخالف هستم).
kaamelan baa saaraa mokhaalefam (mokhaalef hastam).
"I completely disagree with Sara."
4. کاملاً موافقم.
kaamelan movaafegham.
"I totally agree."
5. اصلاً باورم نمی‌شود (نمی‌شود).
aslan baavaram nemishe (nemishavad).
"I can't believe it at all."
6. مثلاً ماهی.
masalan maahi.
"For example, fish."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The national dish of Iran

Chelow kabab or **Chelo kabab** is the most popular Iranian dish and is considered Iran's national dish. It is mainly made of lamb, veal, or sometimes chicken. It is traditionally served with rice or bread; grilled tomatoes; onions; sumac, which is a spice; green leaves, like basil; and **doogh**, which is a sour yogurt drink.

Useful expression

1. برگ / کوپیده / سلطانی.
barg/ koobideh/ soltaani
"Barg/ Koobideh/ Soltani"

These are the most common types of kebab. The kinds of kebabs are based on their preparation and cooking methods.

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #23

Finding the Perfect Hotel in Iran

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Persian
 - Main
 - Romanization
 - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#23

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. فرهاد : به همون (همان) هتل پارسال میریم (می رویم)؟
2. مریم : نه میخوام (می خواهم) یه (یک) جای جدید پیدا کنم.
3. فرهاد : چرا؟
4. مریم : اتاقاش (اتاقهایش) کوچیک (کوچک) و کثیف بودن (بودند).
5. مریم : غذاش هم (غذایش هم) خیلی بد بود.
6. مریم : یه (یک) روز کلاً آب گرم نداشتیم.
7. مریم : بنابراین امسال اونجا (آنجا) نمیریم (نمی رویم).

ROMANIZATION

1. Farhaad : be hamoon (hamaan) hotel-e paarsaal mirim (miravim)?
2. maryam : na mikhaam (mikhaaham) ye (yek) jaa-ye jadid peydaa konam.
3. Farhaad : cheraa?
4. maryam : otaaqaash (otaaq-haayash) koochik-o (koochak va) kasif boodan (boodand).
5. maryam : ghazaash (ghazaa yash) ham kheyli bad bood.
6. maryam : ye (yek) rooz kollan aab-e garm nadaashtim.
7. maryam : banaa bar in emsaal oonja (aanjaa) nemirim (nemiravim).

ENGLISH

1. Farhad : Are we going to the same hotel as last year?
2. Maryam : No, I want to find a new place
3. Farhad : Why?
4. Maryam : The rooms were small and dirty.
5. Maryam : The food was very bad too.
6. Maryam : We had no hot water at all one day.
7. Maryam : Therefore, we won't go there this year.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
پارسال	paar saal	last year	compound noun, adverb
تمیز	tamiz	clean	adjective
همان	hamaan	the same	adjective
نو	no	new	adjective
گرم	garm	warm	adjective
کثیف	kasif	dirty	adjective
امسال	emsaal	this year	compound noun, adverb
غذا	qazaa	food	noun
پیدا کردن	peydaa kardan	to find	verb
بنابراین	banaa bar in	therefore	compound adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

پارسال نفرتم ایران. <i>paarsaal naraftam iraan.</i> Last year, I didn't go to Iran.	اتاق تمیز <i>otaaq-e tamiz</i> clean room
آشپزخانه تمیز است، اما اتاق خواب هنوز کثیف است. <i>aashpazkhaane tamiz ast, ammaa otaaqa khaab hanooz kasif ast.</i> The kitchen is clean, but the bedroom is still messy.	دستت (دست هایت) تمیز نیست (نیستند). <i>dastaat (dast haayat) tamiz nistan (nistan).</i> Your hands are not clean.
همونو (همان را) میخوام (میخواهم). <i>hamoon-o (hamaan raa) mikhaam.</i> I want the same one.	یه (یک) جفت کفش نو خریدم. <i>ye (yek) joft kafsh-e no kharidam.</i> I bought a new pair of shoes.
استمرار در خلق افکار نو زیاد آسان نیست. <i>estemraar dar khalgh-e afkaar-e no ziaad aasaan nist.</i> It's not so easy to keep creating new ideas.	هوا گرم شده (شده است). <i>havaa garm shode (shode ast).</i> The weather has become hot.
این پرده خیلی کثیف بود! <i>in parde kheyli kasif bood.</i> This curtain was so dirty!	امسال زمستون (زمستان) خیلی سردی داریم. <i>emsaal zemestoon-e (zemestaan-e) kheyli sardi daarim.</i> This year, we're having a very cold winter.
باید کمتر غذا بخورم تا لاغر شوم. <i>baayad kamtar ghazaa bokhoram taa laaghar shavam.</i> I must eat less food to lose weight.	چیزی رو که دنبالش بودی پیدا کردی؟ <i>chizi ro ke donbaalesh boodi peydaa kardi?</i> Did you find what you were looking for?

این کتاب پاره اس (پاره است)، بنابراین نمی خریمش (نمی خریمش).

in ketaab paaras (paare ast) banaabar in nemikharimesh (nemikharimash).

This book is torn up; therefore, we won't buy it.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

امسال

emsaal

"this year"

Synonyms of this word are این سال (*in saal*), "this year," همین سال (*hamin saal*) "this very year," and سال حاضر (*saal-e haazer*) "this year" or "current year." The last one is fairly formal.

For example

1. امسال خونه (خانه) میخریم.

emsaal khooneh (khaaneh) mikharim.

"This year, we're going to buy a home."

پارسال

paar saal

"last year"

Synonyms of this word are سال گذشته (*saal-e gozashteh*) "last year" and سال قبل (*saal-e ghabl*) "the previous year." *Saal-e gozashteh* is used in formal situations.

For example

1. پارسال رفت اسپانیا.

Paarsaal raft espaaniyaa.

"Last year, he/she went to Spain."

بنابراین

banaa bar in

"therefore, then, for"

This phrase is made up of three words - بنا (*bana*) "based," بر (*bar*) "on," and این (*in*) "this." In English, it literally translates into "based on this."

A less formal word than بنابراین (*banaa bar in*) is پس (*pas*).

For example

1. (بنابراین اینجا می مونیم) می مانیم.

banaabar in injaa mimoonim (mi maanim).

"Therefore, we'll stay here."

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is The Iranian Calendars and some negative adjectives

به همون (همان) هتل پارسال میریم (می رویم)؟
be hamoon (hamaan) hotel-e paarsaal mirim (miravim)?
"Do we go to the same hotel as last year?"

In this lesson, we will learn about:

1. Iranian Calendars
 2. Some adjectives with negative meanings
-

1. Iranian Calendars

There are three main calendars that Iranians use in everyday life.

1. Iranian calendar, also known as the *Jalali* calendar
2. Gregorian calendar
3. Islamic calendar

Iranian calendar

This is a solar calendar and a rather simplified version of the original *Jalali* calendar. The *Jalali* calendar is claimed to be one of the most accurate calendars in the world. It was created by a committee of astronomers in the year of 1079. One of the prominent scholars of the committee was Omar Khayyam, an Iranian mathematician, astronomer, philosopher, and poet. The calendar was named after Jalal al-Din Malik Shah (a king from the ***Seljuk*** dynasty) who commissioned the reform of the calendar. In the *Jalali* calendar, months were computed based on the precise times of solar transit between zodiac regions. Complicated calculations and the actual observations required to determine the apparent movements of the sun resulted in some modifications at the expense of a less accurate, but simpler, calendar.

Gregorian calendar:

This is a modified version of Julian calendar and is widely used around the world. It is known as the "Western" or "Christian" calendar. As you may know, it was named after Pope Gregory XIII, who introduced it. Unlike the Iranian calendar, which is based on observation, the Gregorian calendar is a rule-based calendar.

Islamic calendar:

Also known as the "Muslim" or "Hijri" calendar, this is used in Iran and predominantly Muslim countries to observe Islamic events and holy days. Since it's a lunar calendar, it is 11 days shorter than the solar year.

Here are the names of months in Iranian calendar and their romanizations.

Persian name	Romanization	Explanation
فروردین	<i>farvardin</i>	Starts either on March 20 or 21
اردیبهشت	<i>ordibehesht</i>	Starts either on April 20 or 21
خرداد	<i>khordaad</i>	Starts either on May 20 or 21
تیر	<i>tir</i>	Starts either on June 20 or 21
مرداد	<i>mordaad</i>	Starts either on July 20 or 21
شهریور	<i>shahrivar</i>	Starts either on August 20 or 21
مهر	<i>mehr</i>	Starts either on September 20 or 21
آبان	<i>aabaan</i>	Starts either on October 20 or 21
آذر	<i>aazar</i>	Starts either on November 20 or 21
دی	<i>dey</i>	Starts either on December 20 or 21
بهمن	<i>bahman</i>	Starts either on January 20 or 21
اسفند	<i>esfand</i>	Starts either on February 20 or 21

The Iranian calendar has 12 months. The (new and fiscal) year begins on the spring equinox. The academic year starts on the fall equinox.

There is a fourth, and currently unofficial, calendar which is called the **Zoroastrian calendar**, but only the Zoroastrian minority observes it in Iran. Events like *Nowruz* ("Iranian New Year"), *Mehregan*, and *Chaharshanbeh suri* are still celebrated according to this ancient Persian calendar. In order to know more about these cultural events please refer to the relevant lessons on Persianpod101.com.

Here are some sample sentences that show how the different calendar systems may reflect in the language.

1. تولد من بیست و یکم (یکم) اسفنده (اسفند است).
tavallod-e man bist-o yek (yekom-e) esfande (esfand ast).
"My birthday is on Esfand 21 (21st)." [March 11th or 12th depending on the year]
2. مرداد گرمترین ماه ساله (سال است).
mordaad garmtarin maah-e saal-e (saal ast).
"Mordaad (July 20th ~ August 20th) is the hottest month of the year."
3. مدارس اول مهر بازگشایی می شوند.
madaares avval-e mehr baazgoshaayi mishavand.
"Schools reopen on Mehr 1 (~September 22)."

2. Some adjectives with negative meanings

It's obvious that addressing someone or someone's possessions with negative adjectives will hurt their feelings. There are a few examples of adjectives with negative meanings in the chart below.

Persian	Romanization	English
چاق	<i>chaaq</i>	"fat"
زشت	<i>zesht</i>	"ugly"
بد	<i>bad</i>	"bad"
خشن	<i>khashen</i>	"rough"
کثیف	<i>kasif</i>	"dirty"
خراب	<i>kharaab</i>	"broken"
بدقواره	<i>bad qavaare</i>	"out of shape"

We'd better avoid using them when it might sound offensive to someone, and it's good to know that there are other ways or softer words you can use to get around negative words yet still be able to give your opinion.

For example, instead of using زشت (**zesht**) "ugly" you can say قشنگ نیست (**qashang nist**) meaning "it's not pretty," or instead of "fat," you can use درشت (**dorosht**) literally meaning "large."

Sample sentences

1. (بچه بی ادبی دارن دارند).
bachche-ye bi-adabi daaran (daarand).
"They have a rude kid."
2. (بچه شیطونی (شیطان) دارن دارند).
bachche-ye sheytooni (sheytaani) daaran (daarand).
"They have a naughty boy"
3. (سمن خیلی پر حرفه (پر حرف است).
saman kheyli porharfe (porharf ast).
"Saman is too talkative."

Examples from the Dialogue

1. (اتاقاش (اتاقهایش) کوچیک (کوچک) و کثیف بودن (بودند).
otaaqaash (otaaq-haayash) koochik-o (koochak va) kasif boodan (boodand).
"The rooms were small and dirty."
2. غذاش هم (غذایش هم) خیلی بد بود.
ghazaash (ghazaa yash) ham kheyli bad bood.
"The food was very bad too."

Sample Sentences

1. (وراجه (وراج است).
verraaje (verraaj ast).
"She/he's chatty."
2. (تنبلم (تنبل هستم).
tanbalam (tanbal hastam).
"I'm lazy."

3. (پوست و استخوانه (پوست و استخوان است).
poost-o ostokhoone (poost va ostokhaan ast).
"She/he's skinny."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Tourism in Iran

Iran is a cultural melting pot, situated on the Silk Road. It was the cradle of an old civilization, which dates back to over five thousand years ago. Nowadays, it has more than 17 UNESCO cultural heritage sites and rich natural beauty. That's why it has the potential to have lots of visitors from around the world, but still lacks infrastructure. Some may even feel it's not safe.

Isfahan and Shiraz are among the most-visited cities by foreigners.

Useful expression

1. گردشگر
gardeshgar
"Tourist"

This is originally a Persian word, used instead of *toorisit*, which also means "tourist."

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #24

Doing Math in Iran

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Persian
 - Main
 - Romanization
 - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#24

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. سیما : مامان، تمرینای (تمرین‌های) ریاضیم رو (را) چک می‌کنی؟
2. شیرین هدایت : سیزده به علاوه بیست و هفت می‌شه (می‌شود) چهل نه سی.
3. سیما : آه، باز اشتباه کردم.
4. شیرین هدایت : پنجاه منهای سی و دو می‌شه (می‌شود) هیجده. این درسته (درست است).
5. شیرین هدایت : سه ضربدر دوازده می‌شه (می‌شود) سی و شیش (شش). آفرین!
6. شیرین هدایت : هفتاد و پنج تقسیم بر پونزده (پانزده) می‌شه (می‌شود).... اینو (این را) جا انداختی.
7. سیما : هفتاد و پنج تقسیم بر پونزده (پانزده) می‌شه (می‌شود) ... پنج.
8. شیرین هدایت : آفرین و شصت درصد پنجاه می‌شه (می‌شود) سی.

ROMANIZATION

1. Simaa : maamaan, tamrin-haa-ye riyaaazim ro (raa) check mikoni?
2. Shirin Hedaayat : sizdah be alaave-ye bist-o haft mishe (mishavad) chehel na si.
3. Simaa : ah, baaz eshtebaah kardam.
4. Shirin Hedaayat : panjaah menhaa-ye si-o do mishe (mishavad) hijdah, in doroste (dorost ast).
5. Shirin Hedaayat : se zarbdar davaazdah mishe (mishavad) si-o shish (shesh). aafarin!
6. Shirin Hedaayat : haftaad-o panj taqsim bar poonzdah (paanzdah) mishe (mishavad)..... ino (in raa) jaa andaakhti.
7. Simaa : haftaad-o panj taqsim bar poonzdah (paanzdah) mishe (mishavad) panj.
8. Shirin Hedaayat : aafarin! va shast darsad-e panjaah mishe (mishavad) si.

ENGLISH

1. Sima : Mom, can you check my math exercises?
2. Shirin Hedayat : 13 plus 27 is 40, not 30.
3. Sima : Ah, I made a mistake again.
4. Shirin Hedayat : 50 minus 32 is 18. It's correct.
5. Shirin Hedayat : 3 multiplied by 12 is 36. Bravo!
6. Shirin Hedayat : 75 divided by 15 is.... You've missed this.
7. Sima : 75 divided by 15 is....5.
8. Shirin Hedayat : Well done! And 60% of 50 is 30.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
درست	dorost	correct	adjective
به علاوه	be'alaave	plus	conjunction
ضرب در	zarb dar	multiplied by	phrase
تقسیم بر	taqsim bar	divided by	phrase
اشتباه کردن	eshtebaah kardan	to make a mistake	verb
منها	menhaa	minus	noun
تمرین	tamirin	exercise	noun
درصد	darsad	percent	compound noun
می‌شه (می‌شود)	mishe (mishavad)	is	verb
آفرین	aafarin	well done, bravo	interjection

SAMPLE SENTENCES

این درست است. <i>in dorost ast.</i> That is correct.	این حرف درست نیست. <i>in harf dorost nist.</i> This is not correct.
سه به علاوه سه می‌شه (می‌شود) شیش (شش). <i>se be'alaave-ye se mishe (mishavad) shish (shesh).</i> Three plus three is six.	نه ضرب در هفت می‌شود شصت و سه. <i>noh zarb dar haft mishavad shast-o seh.</i> Nine multiplied by seven is sixty-three.

<p>بیست و چهار تقسیم بر سه برابر است با هشت. <i>bist-o chaahaar taqsim bar se baraabar ast baa hasht.</i> Twenty-four divided by three equals eight.</p>	<p>تا اشتباه نکنی یاد نمی گیری. <i>taa eshtebehaah nakoni yaad nemigiri.</i> If you don't make mistakes, you won't learn.</p>
<p>هشت منهای یک همیشه هفت. <i>hasht menhaa-ye yek mishe haft.</i> Eight minus one is seven.</p>	<p>هفت منهای دو می شود پنج. <i>haft menhaa-ye do mishavad panj.</i> Seven minus two is five.</p>
<p>امروز تمرین تئاتر داریم. <i>emrooz tamrin-e te'atr daarim.</i> Today, we have play rehearsal.</p>	<p>صد درصد موافقم. <i>sad darsad movaafeqam.</i> I agree 100 percent.</p>
<p>چهل منهای هشت می شود سی و دو. <i>chehel menhaay-e hasht mishavad si-yo do.</i> Forty minus eight is thirty-two.</p>	<p>آفرین به تو! <i>aafarin be to!</i> Hats off to you!</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

آفرین

aafarin

"well done, bravo, good job"

This is a complement to encourage someone who has achieved something good, especially for students and their academic achievements. To mean "very well done" you can combine two words **صد** *sad* ("one hundred") + **آفرین** *aafarin* (" Well done" / "Bravo") = **صد آفرین** *sad aafarin* and it literally means "one hundred bravos."

It's a fairly informal interjection, but you might hear it in a formal setting too. Probably the speaker is being humorous or sarcastic. You can tell by paying attention to the context or the speaker's tone.

For example:

1. تو امتحان قبول شدی، آفرین!
too emtehaana ghabool shodi, aafarin!
 "You passed the exam, well done!"

در صد

darsad

"percent, percentage"

This is a compound noun made of **در** *dar* ("in" or "per") and **صد** (*sad*), meaning "hundred" or "cent." It is a part-by-part translation of its English equivalent.

For example:

1. صد درصد موافقم!
sad darsad movaafegham.
 "I agree one hundred percent!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Simple math in Persian

سیزده به علاوه بیست و هفت می‌شه (می‌شود) چهل نه سی.
sizdah be alaave-ye bist-o haft mishe (mishavad) chehel na si.
"13 plus 27 is 40, not 30. "

In this lesson, we will learn about

1. The most important words and phrases for talking about Math in Persian
-

1. The most important words and phrases for talking about Math in Persian

Let's jump right into the vocabulary and basic math expressions.

The four main operations are

1. جمع
jam'
"addition"
2. تفریق
tafriq
"subtraction"
3. ضرب
zarb
"multiplication"
4. تقسیم
taqsim
"division"

Subsequently, the relevant verbs are

1. جمع کردن
jam' kardan
"to add"
2. تفریق کردن
tafriq kardan
"to subtract"

3. ضرب کردن
zarb kardan
 "to multiply"
4. تقسیم کردن
taqsim kardan
 "to divide"

Here are some relevant phrases and words.

Persian	Romanization	English
به علاوه / به اضافه	<i>be alaave/ be ezaafe</i>	"plus"
منها	<i>menhaa</i>	"minus"
ضرب در	<i>zarb dar</i>	"multiplied by"
تقسیم بر	<i>taqsim bar</i>	"divided by"
و	<i>Va or o</i> (colloquial version)	"and"
تا	<i>taa</i>	"times"
کم کردن	<i>kam kardan</i>	"take away"
می شود	<i>mishavad</i>	"is"
برابر / مساوی است با	<i>baraabar/ mosaavi ast baa</i>	"equals"
درصد	<i>dar sad</i>	"percent, percentage"
و	<i>O</i>	"point" (decimal separator)
دهم	<i>dahom</i>	"tenth"
صدم	<i>sadom</i>	"centesimal" or "hundredth"
هزارم	<i>hezarom</i>	"thousandth"

After *be alaave/ be ezaafe* ("plus") and *menhaa* ("minus"), we need *ezaafe*, meaning "and," to ease the pronunciation of the words which end in letters **ه**, **he do cheshm**, and **ی**, (**alef**) **ی**, (**ye**). But as you already know, in informal writing we can omit **ی**, **ye** after words ending in letter **ه** **he**.

- دو به علاوه هفت می‌شه (می‌شود) نه.
do be alaave-ye do mishe (mishavad) noh.
 "Two plus seven is nine."
- سی منهای سه می‌شه (می‌شود) بیست و هفت.
si menhaa-ye se mishe (mishavad) bist-o haft.
 "Thirty minus three is twenty seven."

As in English, there are certain written and colloquial forms. They are included in the table above.

- دو و پنج می‌شه هفت.
do-o panj (instead of do va panj) mishe (mishavad) haft.
 "Two and five is seven."
- دو دو تا می‌شه (می‌شود) چهار.
Do dot-taa mishe (mishvad) chaahaar.
 "Two times two is four."

Here are some examples for decimal numbers.

1. یک و چهار دهم.

yek-o chaahaar dahom

"One point four (1.4)."

2. پنج و نیم.

panj-o nim

"Five point five (5.5)."

Take note of using نیم *nim* ("half") instead of پنج دهم *panj dahom*. For decimal numbers, we do not use پنج دهم *panj dahom*.

3. دو و سی پنج صدم.

do-o si-yo panj sadam

"Two point thirty-five (2.35)."

4. هفت و چهل و سه هزارم.

haft-o chehel-o se hezaarom

"Seven point zero four three (7.043)."

Sample sentences

1. هفتاد تقسیم بر سی و پنج می‌شه (می‌شود) دو.

haftaad taqsim bar si-o panj mishe (mishavad) do.

"Seventy divided by thirty-five is two."

2. نود و شش به علاوه سه مساوی است با نود و نه.

navad-o shesh be alaave-ye se mosaavi ast baa navad-o noh.

"96 plus 3 equals 99."

3. بیست درصد چهل برابر است با هشت.

bist darsad-e chehel baraabar ast baa hasht.

"20% of 40 equals 8."

Examples from the dialogue

1. (پنجاه منهای سی و دو می‌شه (می‌شود) هیجده. این درسته (درست است).

panjaah menhaa-ye si-o do mishe (mishavad) hijdah, in doroste (dorost ast).

"50 minus 32 is 18. It's correct."

2. سه ضربدر دوازده می‌شه (می‌شود) سی و شش (شش). آفرین!

se zarbdar davaazdah mishe (mishavad) si-o shish. (shesh) aafarin!

"3 multiplied by 12 is 36. Bravo!"

Sample Sentences

1. دوازده منهای سه می‌شه (می‌شود) نه.

davaazdah menhaa-ye se mishe (mishavad) noh.

"12 minus 3 is 9."

2. سیزده به علاوه چهار برابر است با هفده.

sizdah be alaave-ye chaahaar baraabar ast baa hefdah.

"13 plus 4 equals 17."

3. سی تقسیم بر سه می‌شه (می‌شود) ده.

si taqsim bar se mishe (mishavad) dah.

"30 divided by 3 is 10."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Mathematics

The word "algebra" comes from the Arabic word Al-jibr, which means "reunion of broken parts." This part of math is as old as ancient Babylonia. The name of this field of mathematics comes from a book written by an Iranian mathematician, Khwarizmi, who also founded the discipline of Algebra. Another Persian mathematician, Omar Khayyam, is famous for his work on algebraic geometry. He found the general geometric solution of the cubic equation. Tousi and Karaji are other Iranian mathematicians who did fundamental work in this field.

Useful expression

1. جبر
jabr
"Algebra"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #25

Planning a Visit to the Doctor in Iran

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian

 Main

 Romanization

 English

Vocabulary

Sample sentences

Vocabulary phrase usage

Grammar

Cultural insight

#25

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. آقای احمدی : من می خوام (می خواهم) پنجشنبه هفته آینده مرخصی بگیرم.
2. خانم میلانی : چرا؟
3. آقای احمدی : باید همسرم رو (همسرم را) ببرم دکتر.
4. خانم میلانی : خدای نکرده مشکلی پیش اومده (آمده است)؟
5. آقای احمدی : مدتی (مدتی است) همش سردرد داره (دارد).
6. خانم میلانی : شاید فقط به خاطر بارداریه (بارداری است).
7. آقای احمدی : من هم امیدوارم مشکل بزرگی نباشه (نباشد).
8. خانم میلانی : آره مثبت فکر کنین (کنید).

ROMANIZATION

1. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : man mikhaam (mikhaaham) panjshanbe-ye hafte-ye aayande morkhasi begiram.
2. Khanom-e Milaani : cheraa?
3. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : baayad hamsaram ro (raa) bebaram doktor.
4. Khanom-e Milaani : khodaayi nakarde moshkeli pish oomade (aamade ast)?
5. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : moddati-ye (moddati ast) hamash sardard daare (daarad).
6. Khanom-e Milaani : shaayad be khaater-e baardaari-ye (baardaari ast).
7. Aaghaay-e Ahmadi : man ham omidvaaram moshkel-e bozorgi nabaashe (nabaashad).
8. Khanom-e Milaani : aare mosbat fekr konin (konid).

ENGLISH

1. Mr. Ahmadi : I want to take the coming Thursday off!
2. Mrs. Milani : Why?
3. Mr. Ahmadi : I must take my wife to the doctor.
4. Mrs. Milani : God forbid! Is there any problem?
5. Mr. Ahmadi : It's been a while, she's been having headaches all the time!
6. Mrs. Milani : Maybe it's just because of the pregnancy.
7. Mr. Ahmadi : I hope it's not a big problem.
8. Mrs. Milani : Yeah, think positive.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
همسر	hamsar	wife	noun
شاید	shaayad	maybe	adverb
خدای نکرده	khodaayi nakarde	God forbid	expression
مدتی	moddatiye	it's been a while	phrase
بارداری	baardaari	pregnancy	noun
همش	hamash	all the time	adverb
آینده	aayande	incoming	adjective
سر درد	sardard	headache	noun
پیش آمدن	pish aamadan	to happen	verb
مثبت	mosbat	positive	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>همسرش ۱۰ سال از خودش بزرگتره (بزرگتر است).</p> <p><i>hamsaresh (hamsarash) dah saal az khodesh (khodash) bozorgtareh (bozorgtar ast).</i></p> <p>His (her) spouse is ten years older than him (her).</p>	<p>او همسرش است.</p> <p><i>oo hamsarash ast.</i></p> <p>That is his wife.</p>
<p>همسر او ۱۰ سال از خودش بزرگتر است.</p> <p><i>hamsar-e oo 10 saal az khodesh bozorgtar ast.</i></p> <p>His wife is older than him by ten years.</p>	<p>شاید به وقت دیگه.</p> <p><i>shaayad ye vaght-e dige.</i></p> <p>Maybe some other time.</p>

<p>خداى نكرده اتفاق بدى افتاده (افتاده است)؟ <i>khodaayi nakarde ettefaq-e badi oftaade (oftaade ast)?</i> God forbid, has any bad thing happened?</p>	<p>مدتيه نديدمش. <i>moddatiye nadidamesh.</i> It's been a while I haven't seen him (her).</p>
<p>باردارى در سنين بالا خطرناك است. <i>baardaari dar senin-e baalaa khatarnaak ast.</i> Pregnancy is dangerous at older ages.</p>	<p>همش داره غر ميزنه (دارد غر ميزند). <i>hamash daare ghor mizane (daarad ghor mizanad).</i> He's nagging all the time.</p>
<p>تو (در) آينده ميخواي (مى خواهى) چه كاره بشي (بشوى)؟ <i>too (dar) aayande mikhaay (mikhaahi) che kaare beshi (beshavi)?</i> What do you want to be in the future?</p>	<p>سردرد بدى دارم. <i>sardard-e badi daaram.</i> I have a bad headache.</p>
<p>من براى سردرد آسپيرين مى خورم. <i>man baraaye sardard aaspirin mikhoram.</i> "I take aspirin for my headache."</p>	<p>پيش ميااد (مى آيد). <i>pish miyaad.</i> It happens.</p>

صداقت او نظر مثبت استاد را به خود جلب کرد.

sedaaqat-e oo nazar-e mosbat-e ostad raa be khod jalb kard.

His honesty, attracted the positive opinion of his teacher.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

خداى نكرده

khodai nakardeh

"God forbid."

This is a very common phrase in Iran. For example you can say (ممكنه ممكن است) اگر دارو نخورى خداى نكرده ممكنه (ممكنه ***momken ast***) *haalet badtar besheh (beshavad)*, meaning "If you don't take medicine, God forbid, your health may become worse."

For example:

- خداى نكرده مريض شدى؟
khodaai nakardeh mariz shodi?
 "God forbid, have you gotten sick?"

باردار

baar daar

"pregnant"

This is made up of two words بار *baar* ("load") and دار *daar* ("to have"), so it literally means "to have a load." "Load" refers to the baby. "Pregnancy" is باردارى *baardaari*.

For example

- (همسرم بارداره (باردار است).
hamsaram baardaareh (baar daar ast).

"My wife's pregnant."

(همش (همه اش / همه آن
hamash (hameh ash/ hamey-e aan)
"all the time, all of it"

Depending on the context, the meaning can change, either "all the time" or "all of it." Here are some examples: همش به تو فکر می‌کنم *hamash be to fekr mikonam* ("I think of you all the time") and همش را (می‌خواهم (می‌خواهم). *hamash raa mikhaam(mikhaaham)* ("I want all of it.")

For example:

1. (همش حرف می‌زنه (می‌زند).
hamash harf mizaneh (mizanad).
"She's talking all the time."

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Giving reasons for actions

(شاید فقط به خاطر بارداریه (بارداری است).
shaayad be khaater-e baardaari-ye (baardaari ast).
"Maybe it's just because of pregnancy."

In this lesson, we will learn

1. Giving reasons for actions

1. Giving reasons for actions

When someone asks you "Why?" or, in Persian, چرا *cheraa*, here are some the common conjunctions for giving reasons in response.

Persian	Romanization	English
چون	<i>chon</i>	"because"
چون که	<i>chon ke</i>	"because"
برای اینکه	<i>baraaye inke</i>	"because"
به خاطر	<i>be khaater-e</i>	"because of"
به خاطر اینکه	<i>be khaater-e inke</i>	"because"
به دلیل / به علت	<i>be dalil-e/ be ellat-e</i>	"owing to, due to, as a result of, by reason of"
به علت اینکه / به دلیل اینکه	<i>be ellat-e inke</i>	"owing to, due to"
از آنجایی که	<i>az aanjaayi ke</i>	"since"
زیرا	<i>ziraa</i>	"for"

Several words and phrases have been introduced as an equivalent for "because" and "because of." They are interchangeable.

Sample sentences

- چون دوست (دوستت) دارم نصیحتت می کنم.
chon dooset (doostat) daaram nasihatet (nasihatat) mikonam.
"I advise you, because I like you."
- به علت بارش برف سنگین تمام پروازها کنسل شدند.
be ellat-e baresh-e barf-e sangin, tamaam-e parvaaz-haa kansel shodand.
"All flights were canceled due to heavy snowfall."
- به خاطر خودت اصرار می‌کنم.
be khaater-e khodet esraar mikonam.
"I insist, for your own sake."
- (برای اینکه بنفش به زرد می‌آید).
baraaye inke banafsh be zard miyaad (miaayad).
"Cuz (because) purple goes well with yellow."
- (به خاطر بارون نتوانست بیاد (باران نتوانست بیاید)).
be khaater-e baroon natoonest biyaad (baaraan natavaanest biaayad).
"She/he couldn't come because of the rain."
- مریض به دلیل سکته قلبی فوت کرد.
mariz be dalil-e sekte-ye qalbi fot kard.
"The patient passed away due to a heart attack."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Health Care System

Iran has a modern health care system, and most of the people are covered. Iran produces most of the locally consumed medicines and exports pharmaceutical products to countries in Central Asia and also the Middle East. There are some well-equipped hospitals in Tehran and other major cities. There are many private hospitals in the country. Plastic surgery is very popular. Many people travel to Iran to enjoy the reasonable prices offered for a wide range of plastic surgeries. Some consider Iran as the best place to get a nose surgery. These surgeries are not covered by insurance.

Useful expression

1. سازمان بیمه سلامت ایران

saazmaan-e bime-ye salaamat-e iraan

"Iran Health Insurance Organization"

LESSON NOTES

Top 400 Activities: Daily Routines in Persian #1

In the Morning

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian
Main
Romanization
English
Vocabulary
Sample sentences

#1

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. هفت صب بیدار می شوم.
2. زنگمو خاموش می کنم.
3. از تخت بلن می شوم.
4. صورتمو می شورم.
5. خمیردندون میذارم رو مسواک.
6. مسواک می زنم.
7. سیفونو می کشم.
8. تلویزیونو روشن می کنم.
9. اخبارو نگا میکنم.
10. لباس می پوشم.
11. قهوه درست می کنم.
12. صبونه میخورم.
13. آشغالو رو میذارم دم در.
14. سگ رو میبرم پیاده روی.
15. به گربه غذا می دم.
16. با بچه ها سر و کله می زنم.
17. با خانواده ام صحبت می کنم.
18. درو قفل می کنم.
19. وایمیستم تا آسانسور بیاد.
20. با همسایه سلام علیک می کنم.

ROMANIZATION

1. haft-e sob bidaar misham.
2. zangamo khaamoosh mikonam?
3. az takht bolan misham.
4. sooratam-o mishooram.
5. roo mesvaak khamir-dandoon mizaaram.
6. mesvaak mizanam.
7. sifoon-o mikesham.
8. televiziyon-o roshan mikonam.
9. akhbaar-o negaa mikonam.
10. lebaas mipoosham.
11. ghahveh dorost mikonam.
12. sobooneh mikhoram.
13. aashghaalaa ro mizaaram dam-e dar.
14. sag ro mibaram piyaadeh ravi.
15. beh gorbek ghazaa midam.
16. baa bach-chehaa sar-o kal-leh mizanam.
17. baa khaanevaadam sohbat mikonam.
18. dar-o ghofl mikonam.
19. vaaymistam taa aasaansor biyaad.
20. baa hamsaayeh salaam aleyk mikonam.

ENGLISH

1. I wake up at 7 a.m.
2. I turn off my alarm.
3. I get out of bed.
4. I wash my face.
5. I put toothpaste on my toothbrush.
6. I brush my teeth.
7. I flush the toilet.
8. I turn on the TV.
9. I watch the news.
10. I put on my clothes.
11. I make coffee.
12. I eat breakfast.
13. I take out the trash.
14. I walk the dog.
15. I feed the cat.
16. I argue with the kids.
17. I talk to my family.
18. I lock the door.
19. I wait for the elevator.
20. I greet the neighbor.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
گره	gorbe	cat	noun
بچه	bach-cheh	kid	noun
بیدار شدن	bidaar shodan	wake up	verb
قهوه	qahve	coffee	noun
خانواده	Khaanevaade	family	noun
زنگ	zang	alarm	noun
مسواک زدن	mesvaak zadan	teeth	noun
در	dar	door	noun
سیفون را کشیدن	sifoon raa keshidan	toilet	noun
صورت	Soorat	face	noun
مسواک	mesvaak	toothbrush	noun
لباس	lebaas	clothes	noun
صبحانه	sobhaane	breakfast	noun
سگ	sag	dog	noun
تلویزیون	Television	TV	noun
آشغال	aashqaal	trash	noun
تخت	takht	bed	noun
اخبار	akhbaar	news	noun
آسانسور	aasaansor	elevator	noun
همسایه	hamsaaye	neighbor	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

گره بزرگ	نوزاد گره، بچه گره نامیده می شود.
<i>gorbeye bozorg</i> big cat	<i>nozaad-e gorbe, bache gorbe naamide mishavad.</i> A baby cat is called a kitten.
گره حیوان خانگی	گره سیاه و سفید
<i>gorbeye khaanegi</i> pet cat	<i>gorbeye siaah o sefid</i> black and white cat
گره سیاه روی صفحه راه می رود.	گره راه راه با نخ قرمز بازی می کند.
<i>gorbeye siaah rooye safhe raah miravad.</i> The black cat is walking across the screen.	<i>gorbeye raah raah baa nakh-e qermez baazi mikonad.</i> The striped cat is playing with red yarn.

<p>گربه سیاه روی صفحه راه می رود. <i>gorbeh-e siah rooye safheh raah miravad</i> The black cat is walking across the screen.</p>	<p>اعضای خانواده در حال خوردن شام هستند. <i>a'zaaye khaanevaadeh dar haale khordan-e shaam hastand.</i> The family is eating dinner.</p>
<p>خانواده شاد <i>khaanevaadey-e shaad</i> happy family</p>	<p>اعضای خانواده دارند ناهار می خورند. <i>a'zaay-e khaanevaadeh daarand naahaar mikhorand.</i> The family is having lunch.</p>
<p>اعضای خانواده برای عکس لبخند می زنند. <i>a'zaaye khaanevaadeh baraaye aks labkhand mizanand.</i> The family is smiling for the picture.</p>	<p>عکس های خانوداگی <i>aks-haaye khaanevaadegi</i> family picture</p>
<p>خانواده سلطنتی گردهمایی مهمی خواهند داشت . <i>khaanevaade-ye saltanati gerdehamaayi-ye mohemmi khaahand daasht.</i> The Royal Family will have an important reunion.</p>	<p>در ورودی <i>Dar-e voroodi</i> front door</p>
<p>در زدن <i>Dar zadan</i> knock on the door</p>	<p>مرد دارد در ماشین را با سوچ باز می کند. <i>Mard daarad dar-e maashin raa baa sooich baaz mikonad.</i> The man is unlocking the car door with the key.</p>
<p>در بسته است. <i>Dar baste ast.</i> The door is closed.</p>	<p>مرد دارد در را می بندد. <i>Mard daarad dar raa mibandad.</i> The man is closing the door.</p>
<p>لطفا در را ببند، بیرون سر و صداست. <i>lotfan dar raa beband, biroon sar o sedaast.</i> Please close the door, it is loud outside.</p>	<p>چهره زیبا <i>chehre-ye zibaa</i> nice figure</p>
<p>پسر دارد صورتش را لیف می کشد. <i>Pesar daarad sooratash raa lif mikeshad.</i> The boy is washing his face with a washcloth.</p>	<p>من خرید لباس را دوست دارم. <i>man kharid-e lebaas raa doost daaram.</i> I love shopping for clothes.</p>
<p>صبحانه چی خوردی؟ <i>sobhaane chi khordi?</i> What did you have for breakfast?</p>	<p>برای صبحانه چی خوردی؟ <i>baraaye sobhaane chi khordi?</i> What did you have for breakfast?</p>
<p>سگ پیر <i>sag-e pir</i> old dog</p>	<p>پسر یک سگ خانگی دارد. <i>pesar yek sag-e khaanegi daarad.</i> The boy has a pet dog.</p>

سگ بزرگ	سگ پشمالو
<p><i>sag-e bozorg</i> big dog</p>	<p><i>sag-e pashmaaloo</i> hairy dog</p>
<p>سگ کوچک در حیاط با توپ زرد بازی می‌کند. <i>sag-e koochak dar hayaat baa toop-e zard baazi mikonad.</i> The little dog is playing with a yellow ball in the yard.</p>	<p>سگ پشمالو دنبال توپ می‌دود. <i>sag-e pashmaaloo donbaal-e toop midavad.</i> The shaggy dog is running after the ball.</p>
<p>یک سگ قهوه ای و یک سگ سیاه <i>yek sag-e qahve i va yek sag-e siaah</i> a brown dog and a black dog</p>	<p>سگ حیوون (حیوان) وفاداربه (وفاداری است). <i>sag heyvooon-e (heyvvaan-e) vafaadari-ye (vafaa daari ast).</i> Dogs are loyal animals.</p>
<p>سگ پشمالو در حال دویدن به دنبال توپ است. <i>sag-e pashmaaloo dar haal-e davidan be donbal-e toop ast.</i> The shaggy dog is running after a ball.</p>	<p>اخبار امروز را شنیده ای؟ <i>akhbaar-e emrooz raa shenide'i?</i> Have you heard today's news?</p>

آسانسور خراب است، پس باید از راه‌پله‌ها استفاده کنید.

aasaansor kharaab ast, pas baayad az pelehaa estefaade konid.

The elevator is broken, so you must use the stairs.

LESSON NOTES

Top 400 Activities: Daily Routines in Persian #2

Commuting to Work

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Persian
 - Main
 - Romanization
 - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences

#2

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. بچه هامو بغل می کنم.
2. میرم سر کار.
3. تا ایستگاه اتوبوس پیاده می رم.
4. از خیابون رد می شم.
5. کارتم رو شارژ می کنم.
6. از پله ها میرم بالا.
7. عجله می کنم که به اتوبوس برسم.
8. کارتمو روی کارت خون کشیدم.
9. با موبایلم آهنگ گوش می کنم.
10. یه چرت کوتاه می زنم.
11. جامو میدم به یه خانوم مسن.
12. ساعتو می بندم.
13. تو ترافیک سنگین گیر می کنم.
14. یه تماس با خانومم می گیرم.
15. تو راه بندون گیر می کنم.
16. خبرارو رو گوشیم می خونم.
17. از اتوبوس پیاده می شم.
18. برای کار خوراکی می گیرم.
19. وارد ساختمون میشم.
20. سریع از پله برقی میرم بالا.

ROMANIZATION

1. bach-chehaam-o baghal mikonam.
2. miram sar-e kaar.
3. taa istgaah-e ootooboos piyaadeh miram.
4. az khiyaaboon rad misham.
5. kaartam-o sharzh mikonam
6. az pel-lehaa miram baalaa.
7. ajaleh mikonam keh beh ootooboos beresam.
8. kartam-o rooy-e kaart khoon keshidam.
9. baa mobaaylam aahang goosh midam.
10. yeh chort-e kootah mizanam.
11. jaam-o midam beh yeh khaanoom mosen.
12. saa'atamo mibandam.
13. too teraafik-e sangin gir mikonam.
14. yeh tamaas baa khaanoomam migiram.
15. too raah bandoon gir mikonam.
16. khabaraa-ro roo gooshim mikhonam.
17. az ootooboos piyadeh misham.
18. baraay-e kaar khoraaki migiram.
19. vaared-e saakhtemoon misham.
20. sari' az peleh barghi miram baalaa.

ENGLISH

1. I hug my kids.
2. I go to work.
3. I walk to the bus station.
4. I cross the street.
5. I recharge my card.
6. I go up the stairs.
7. I rush to catch the bus.
8. I touch my card to the reader.
9. I listen music on my smart phone.
10. I take a short nap.
11. I offer my seat to an elderly woman.
12. I put on my watch.
13. I get caught in heavy traffic.
14. I make a call to my wife.
15. I get stuck in a traffic jam.
16. I read news on my phone.
17. I get off the bus.
18. I buy snacks for work.
19. I enter the building.
20. I run up the escalator.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
پله برقی	pele barqi	escalator	noun
راهبندان	raah-bandaan	traffic jam	noun
گوشی	gooshi	phone	noun
بغل کردن	baqal kardan	hug	verb
جا	jaa	seat	noun
پایاده شدن	piyaadeh shodan	to get off	noun
کار	kaar	work	noun
پله ها	pel-leha	stairs	noun
خوراکی	khoraaki	snack	noun
اتوبوس	otoboos	bus	noun
خیابان	khiaabaan	street	noun
شارژ کردن	shaarzh kardan	recharge	noun
چرت	chort	nap	verb
ساعت	saa'at	watch	noun
تماس	tamaas	phone call	phrase
کارت	kaart	ticket	noun
ترافیک	teraafik	traffic	noun
ایستگاه اتوبوس	istgaah-e otopoos	bus station	noun
آهنگ	aahang	music	noun
ساختمان	saakhtemaan	building	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

دیشب در ساختمان آن دست خیابان آتش سوزی بود.

dishab dar saakhtemaan-e aan dast-e khiyaabaan aatash soozii bood.

Last night, there was a fire in the building across the street.

LESSON NOTES

Top 400 Activities: Daily Routines in Persian #3

Computers and Computing

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Persian
 - Main
 - Romanization
 - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences

#3

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. کامپیوترمو روشن میکنم.
2. یادداشتای روی تبلتمو میخونم.
3. ایمیلمو چک میکنم.
4. نرم افزار جدید نصب می کنم.
5. فایلارو زیپ می کنم.
6. به فایل دانلود می کنم.
7. از یه سند پرینت می گیرم.
8. به ویدئو به یوتیوب آپلود می کنم.
9. به یه نظر پاسخ میدم.
10. یه برنامه رو می بندم.
11. کامپیوترو ریستارت می کنم.
12. تو اینترنت میگردم.
13. یه سایتو بوک مارک می کنم.
14. یه تصویر و اتچ به ایمیل می کنم.
15. فایروالو فعال می کنم.
16. از ایمیل اکانت رایگان استفاده می کنم.
17. فولدر اسپمو چک می کنم.
18. از دوتا برازر متفاوت استفاده می کنم.
19. همه پنجره هارو می بندم.
20. کامپیوترو خاموش می کنم.

ROMANIZATION

1. kaampiyooteram-o roshan mikonam.
2. yaddaashtaay-e rooy-e tabletam-o mikhoonam.
3. imeylaam-o chek mikonam.
4. narm afzaar-e jadid nasb mikonam.
5. faaylaa-ro zip mikonam.
6. yeh faayl daanlod mikonam.
7. az yeh sanad pirint migiram.
8. yeh video be yootiyoob aaplod mikonam.
9. be yeh nazar paasokh midam.
10. yeh barnaama-ro mibandam,
11. kaampiyooter-o ristaart mikonam.
12. too internet migardam.
13. yeh saayt-o bookmaark mikonam.
14. yeh tasvir-o atach-e yeh imeyl mikonam.
15. faayervaal-o fa'aal mikonam.
16. az yeh imeyl akaant-e raygaan estefaadeh mikonam.
17. folder-e espam-o chek mikonam.
18. az do-taa beraazer-e motefavet estefaadeh mikonam.
19. hame-ye panjerehaa-ro mibandam.
20. kaampiyooter-o khaamoosh mikonam.

ENGLISH

1. I turn on my computer.
2. I read notes on my tablet.
3. I check my email.
4. I install new software.
5. I compress files into a single zip file.
6. I download a file.
7. I print out a document.
8. I upload a video to YouTube.
9. I reply to a comment.
10. I quit the program.
11. I restart the computer.
12. I browse the Internet.
13. I bookmark a website.
14. I add an image as an attachment to an email.
15. I turn on the firewall.
16. I use a free email account.
17. I check the spam folder.
18. I use two different web browsers.
19. I close all windows.
20. I shut down the computer.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
خاموش کردن	khaamoosh kardan	shut down	noun
فایروال	faayervaal	firewall	noun
اکانت	akaant	account	noun
کامپیوتر	kaampiyoter	computer	noun
ریستارت کردن	restaart kardan	restart	verb
اسپم	esbam	spam	noun
تبلت	tablet	tablet	noun
دانلود کردن	daanlod kardan	download	noun
برازر	beraazer	web browser	noun
سند	sanad	document	noun
نرم افزار	narm afzaar	software	noun
فایل	faayl	file	noun
برنامه	barnaame	program	noun
اینترنت	Internet	Internet	noun
اتچمنت	attachment	attachment	noun
آپلود کردن	aaplod	upload	verb
سایت	saayt	website	noun
ایمیل	imeyl	email	noun
نظر	nazar	comment	noun
پنجره	panjere	window	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>من هرروز حداقل پنج ساعت برای کار پای کامپیوتر وقت می گذرانم.</p> <p><i>Man har rooz hadde aqal panj saa'at baraaye kaar paaye kaampiooter vaqt migozaraanam.</i></p> <p>I spend at least five hours a day working at my computer.</p>	<p>من دو کامپیوتر دارم، یک لپ تاپ و یک کامپیوتر رومیزی.</p> <p><i>Man do kaampiooter daaram, yek laptaap va yek kaampiooter-e roomizi.</i></p> <p>I have two computers: a laptop computer and a desktop computer.</p>
<p>استفاده از کامپیوتر برای کار</p> <p><i>Estefaade az Kaampiooter baraaye kaar</i></p> <p>use a computer for work</p>	<p>کامپیوتر رومیزی</p> <p><i>Kaampiooter-e roomizi</i></p> <p>desktop computer</p>

<p>کامپیوتر من همواره پیغامهای خطا نشان میدهد. <i>kampiooter-e man hamvaareh peyghaamhaaye khataa neshaan midahad.</i> My computer is displaying error messages all the time.</p>	<p>این روزها من کتاب و موسیقی را از اینترنت خریداری می‌کنم. <i>in roozhaa man ketaab va moosiqi raa az internet kharidaari mikonam.</i> These days I shop for books and music on the Internet.</p>
<p>وصل شدن به اینترنت <i>Vasl shodan be internet</i> connect to the Internet</p>	<p>آدرس اینترنتی <i>Aadress-e interneti</i> Internet address</p>
<p>شبکه جهانی اینترنت <i>Shabakeye jahaani-e Internet</i> world wide Internet</p>	<p>حمام پنجره باریکی دارد. <i>hamaam panjereye baariki daarad.</i> The bathroom has a tiny window.</p>

LESSON NOTES

Top 400 Activities: Daily Routines in Persian #4

Housework

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian
Main
Romanization
English
Vocabulary
Sample sentences

#4

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. پنجره هارو پاک می کنم.
2. فرشو جارو برقی می کشم.
3. فرو تمیز می کنم.
4. قفسه ها رو گردگیری می کنم.
5. قبضارو پرداخت می کنم.
6. به گلا آب میدم.
7. لباس می شورم.
8. از نرم کننده لباس استفاده می کنم.
9. ظرفارو می شورم.
10. یه لامپو عوض می کنم.
11. از بچه ها می خوام تکالیفشونو تموم کنن.
12. ناهار درست می کنم.
13. خواروبار می خرم.
14. یه کتابخونه جدید سرهم کردم.
15. تغییر دکوراسیون میدم.
16. دیوارو رنگ می کنم.
17. یه صندلی شکسته رو تعمیر می کنم.
18. ماشین خانواده رو می شورم.
19. به پدر مادرم سر می زنم.
20. روز رو تنبل وار می گذرونم.

ROMANIZATION

1. panjerehaa-ro paak mikonam.
2. farsh-o jaaroo barghi mikesham.
3. fer-o tamiz mikonam
4. ghafasehaa-ro garddiri mikonam.
5. ghabzaa-ro pardaakht mikonam.
6. beh golaa aab midam.
7. lebaas mishooram.
8. az narm konande-ye lebaas estefaadeh mikonam.
9. zarfaa-ro mishoram.
10. yeh laamp-o avaz mikonam.
11. az bach-che-haa mikhaam takaalifeshoon-o tamoom konan.
12. naahaar dorost mikonam.
13. khaar-o baar mikharam.
14. yeh ketaabkhoone-ye jadid sar-e ham mikonam.
15. taghir-e dekoraasiyon midam.
16. divaar-o rang mikonam.
17. yeh sandali-ye shekasta-ro tamir mikonam.
18. maashin-e khaanevaad-ro mishooram.
19. beh pedar maadaram sar mizanam.
20. rooz-ro tanbal vaar migzaroonam.

ENGLISH

1. I wipe the window.
2. I vacuum the carpet.
3. I clean the oven.
4. I dust the shelves.
5. I pay the bills.
6. I water the plants.
7. I do the laundry.
8. I use fabric softener.
9. I do the dishes.
10. I change a lightbulb.
11. I ask the kids to finish their homework.
12. I make lunch.
13. I buy groceries.
14. I assemble a new bookshelf.
15. I rearrange the furniture.
16. I paint the walls.
17. I fix a broken chair.
18. I wash the family car.
19. I call my parents.
20. I spend the day being lazy.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
مبلمان	moblemaan	furniture	noun
دیوار	divaar	wall	noun
پنجره	panjere	window	noun
تکلیف خانه	taklif-e khaane	homework	noun
صندلی	sandali	chair	noun
فرش	farsh	carpet	noun
گیاه	giyaah	plant	noun
ماشین	Maashin	car	noun
شستنی	shostani	laundry	noun
قفسه	qafase	shelf	noun
قبض	ghabz	bill	noun
لامپ	laamp	lightbulb	noun
ناهار	naahaar	lunch	noun
کتابخونه	ketaabkhooneh	bookshelf	noun
نرم کننده	narm-konande	softener	noun
خوروبار	khaar-o baar	groceries	noun
فر	Fer	oven	noun
ظرف	zarf	dish	noun
پدر مادر	pedar maadar	parent	noun
تنبل	tanbal	lazy	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>روی دیوارهای ما تصاویر زیادی نصب شده است.</p> <p><i>Rooye divaarhaaye maa tasaavir-e ziaadi nasb shode ast.</i></p> <p>There are a lot of pictures hanging on our walls.</p>	<p>دیوار نارنجی</p> <p><i>Divaar-e naarenji</i></p> <p>orange wall</p>
<p>دیوار آجری</p> <p><i>Divaar-e aajori</i></p> <p>brick wall</p>	<p>حمام پنجره باریکی دارد.</p> <p><i>hamaam panjereye baariki daarad.</i></p> <p>The bathroom has a tiny window.</p>
<p>مشق شب بخش مهمی از تجربه یادگیری شماست.</p> <p><i>mashq-e shab bakhsh-e mohemmi az tajrobeye yadgiri-e shomast.</i></p> <p>Your homework is one important part of the learning experience.</p>	<p>صندلی چوبی شکست.</p> <p><i>sandali-ye choobi shekast.</i></p> <p>The wooden chair broke.</p>

<p>مرد دارد ماشین می راند.</p> <p><i>Mard daarad Maashin miraanad.</i></p> <p>The man is driving a car.</p>	<p>فرش ایرانی بخش مهمی از فرهنگ و هنر ایران است.</p> <p><i>farsh-e iraani bakhsh-e mohemi az farhang va honar-e iraan ast.</i></p> <p>The Persian carpet is an essential part of Persian art and culture.</p>
<p>این یک ماشین آبی دو دره است.</p> <p><i>In yek maashin-e aabi-e do dare ast.</i></p> <p>It's a blue, two-door car.</p>	<p>مرد دارد ماشین را هل می دهد.</p> <p><i>Mard daarad maashin raa hol midahad.</i></p> <p>The man is pushing the car.</p>
<p>اون یه ماشین آبی انتخاب کرد.</p> <p><i>oon ye maashin-e aabi entekhab kard.</i></p> <p>He chose a blue car.</p>	<p>سگ دارد داخل ماشین می شود.</p> <p><i>Sag daarad daakhel-e maashin mishavad.</i></p> <p>The dog is getting in the car.</p>
<p>نمک رو (روی) این قفسه نیست.</p> <p><i>namak roo (rooye) in qafase nist.</i></p> <p>The salt isn't on this shelf.</p>	<p>با ماشین آمدم.</p> <p><i>baa maashin aamadam.</i></p> <p>I came by car.</p>
<p>من ترجیح میدهم ناهار را در پارک به تنهایی بخورم.</p> <p><i>man tarjih midaham naahaar raa dar park be tanhaaii bokhoram.</i></p> <p>I prefer to eat lunch on my own in the park.</p>	<p>محتویات اون قفسه برای بچه های این خونه ممنوعه.</p> <p><i>mohtaviyaat-e oon qafase baraaye bachche-haaye in khoone mamnoo'e.</i></p> <p>The content of that shelf is forbidden to the kids of this house.</p>

LESSON NOTES

Top 400 Activities: Daily Routines in Persian #5

At the Office

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Persian
 - Main
 - Romanization
 - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences

#5

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. با کارت شناسایی ساعت ورود می زنم.
2. پشت میز میشینم.
3. اولویت هامو تعیین می کنم.
4. ازم میخوان رویه پروژه کارکنم.
5. مستندات ایجاد می کنم.
6. تویه جلسه شرکت می کنم.
7. میزمو مرتب می کنم.
8. به مداد میدارم تویه کشو.
9. به یه ایمیل جواب میدم.
10. یادداشت برمیدارم.
11. تجهیزات اداری سفارش میدم.
12. به فکس میفرستم.
13. برای ناهار با همکارام میرم بیرون.
14. به تماس تلفنی دریافت می کنم.
15. به ارائه آماده می کنم.
16. مرخصی استحقاقی می گیرم.
17. به ایده جدید کشف می کنم.
18. رو کاغذ چک نویس یادداشت برمیدارم.
19. سروقت از اداره میرم بیرون.
20. به ساعت اضافه کاری می کنم.

ROMANIZATION

1. baa kart-e shenaasaai saa'at-e voorood mizanam.
2. posht-e mizam mishinam
3. olaviyat-haamo tain mikonam.
4. azam mikhaan roo yeh porozheh kaar konam.
5. mostanadaat ijaad mikonam.
6. too yeh jalaseh sherkat mikonam
7. mizam-o morat-tab mikonam.
8. yeh medaad mizaaram tu yeh kesho.
9. beh yeh imeyl javab midam.
10. yadd-dasht barmidaaram.
11. tajhizaat-e edaari sefaaresh midam.
12. yeh faks mifrestam.
13. baraay-e naahaar baa hamkaaraam miram biroon.
14. yeh tamaas-e telefoni daryaaft mikonam.
15. yeh eraae aamadeh mikonam.
16. morakh-khasi-ye estehghaaghi migiram.
17. yeh ide-ye jadid kashf mikonam.
18. ro kaaghaz-e cheknevis yaad-daasht barmidaaram.
19. sar-e vaght az edaareh miram biroon.
20. yeh saa'at ezaafeh kaari mikonam.

ENGLISH

1. I clock in with my ID card.
2. I sit at my desk.
3. I set my priorities.
4. I am asked to work on a task.
5. I create documentation.
6. I attend a meeting.
7. I tidy up my desk.
8. I put a pen in a drawer.
9. I answer an email.
10. I take notes.
11. I order office equipment.
12. I send a fax.
13. I go out for lunch with my colleagues.
14. I receive a phone call.
15. I prepare a presentation.
16. I take paid leave.
17. I come up with a new idea.
18. I take notes on scratch paper.
19. I leave the office on time.
20. I work one hour overtime.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
اضافه کار	ezaafekaar	overtime	compound noun
بیرون رفتن	biroon raftan	leave	verb
ارائه	eraa'e	presentation	none
مرخصی	morakh-khasi	vacation	noun
کارت شناسایی	kaart-e shenaasaai	ID card	noun
تجهیزات	tajhizaat	equipment	noun
ایده	ide	idea	noun
میز	miz	desk	noun
جلسه	Jalase	meeting	noun
کاغذ	kaaghaz	paper	noun
مرتب کردن	morat-tab kardan	tidy up	verb
اولویت	olavi-yat	priority	noun
مستندات	mostanadaat	documentation	noun
یادداشت	yad-daasht	note	noun
فکس	faks	fax	noun
تماس تلفنی	tamaas-e telefoni	phone call	noun
کشتو	kesho	drawer	noun
ناهار	naahaar	lunch	noun
پروژه	porozheh	project	noun
جواب دادن	Javaab daadan	answer	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>اضافه کار وایمیستی؟</p> <p><i>ezaafekaar vaaymisti?</i></p> <p>Will you do overtime?</p>	<p>بهترین راه برای فروختن یک ایده، آماده سازی خوب جهت ارائه است.</p> <p><i>behtarin raah baraa-ye foookhtan-e yek ideh aamaadeh sazi-ye khoob jahat-e eraa'e ast</i></p> <p>The best way to sell an idea is to be well prepared for a presentation.</p>
<p>اگه میخوای اسکی یاد بگیری باید تمام تجهیزات لازم بخری.</p> <p><i>ageh mikhaay eski yaad begiri baayad tamaam-e tajhizaat-e laazem o bekhari.</i></p> <p>If you want to learn how to ski, you will have to buy all the equipment required.</p>	<p>ایده تو را در این مورد پسندیدم.</p> <p><i>ide-ye to raa dar in mored pasandidam.</i></p> <p>I liked your idea in this case.</p>

<p>جلسه در اتاق هیئت مدیره</p> <p><i>Jalase dar otaaq-e hey'at modire</i></p> <p>meeting in the boardroom</p>	<p>ما فردا ساعت ۱۰:۳۰ صبح در هتل سیتی پارک جلسه داریم.</p> <p><i>Maa fardaa saa'at-e dah o nim-e sobh dar Hotel-e sity paark jalase daarim.</i></p> <p>We have a meeting tomorrow morning at 10:30 a.m. at the City Park Hotel.</p>
<p>جلسه ناهار</p> <p><i>Jalaseye naahaar</i></p> <p>lunch meeting</p>	<p>جلسه تجاری</p> <p><i>Jalaseye tejaari</i></p> <p>business meeting</p>
<p>رئیس در حال برگزاری جلسه است.</p> <p><i>Ra'is dar haal-e bargozaari-e jalase ast.</i></p> <p>The boss is holding a meeting.</p>	<p>کارمندان در اتاق هیئت مدیره جلسه دارند.</p> <p><i>Kaarmandaan dar otaaq-e hey'at modire jalase daarand.</i></p> <p>The employees are having a meeting in the boardroom.</p>
<p>همکاران جلسه دارند.</p> <p><i>hamkaaraan jalase daarand.</i></p> <p>The coworkers are having a meeting.</p>	<p>جلسه در منطقه اقتصادی برگزار خواهد شد.</p> <p><i>jalaseh dar mantagheh eghtesaadi bargozar khahad shod.</i></p> <p>The meeting will take place in the finance district.</p>
<p>کاغذ و مداد</p> <p><i>kaaqaaz va medaad</i></p> <p>paper and pencil</p>	<p>برگه کاغذ</p> <p><i>bargeye kaaqaaz</i></p> <p>piece of paper</p>
<p>به کاغذ چسب بزنید.</p> <p><i>be kaaqaaz chasb bezanid.</i></p> <p>Apply glue to the paper.</p>	<p>کاغذ را پاره نکنید.</p> <p><i>Kaghaz ra pareh nakonid.</i></p> <p>"Don't tear the paper."</p>
<p>من ترجیح میدهم ناهار را در پارک به تنهایی بخورم.</p> <p><i>man tarjih midaham naahaar raa dar park be tanhaai bokhoram.</i></p> <p>I prefer to eat lunch on my own in the park.</p>	

LESSON NOTES

Top 400 Activities: Daily Routines in Persian #6

Health and Diet

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Persian
 - Main
 - Romanization
 - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences

#6

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. به رژیم جدید امتحان می کنم.
2. میرم روترازو.
3. رو بالابردن سوخت و سازم کار می کنم.
4. دوبار تو هفته ورزش می کنم.
5. هر روز درازنشست میرم.
6. هر روز شنا میرم.
7. به چکاپ انجام میدم.
8. آب نمک غرغره میکنم.
9. میخوام سرما نخورم.
10. سعی میکنم بیشتر سبزیجات بخورم.
11. غذاهایی که مینرال زیاد داره میخورم.
12. ویتامین زیاد میخورم.
13. غذاهای فیبردار حتما میخورم.
14. غذاهایی که کربوهیدرات کمی دارن میخورم.
15. غذاهایی که پروتئین زیادی دارن میخورم.
16. از پله ها میدوم بالا.
17. سعی میکنم رژیم متعادلی داشته باشم.
18. کالری میشمرم.
19. شیرینی جات کمتر میخورم.
20. تسلیم وسوسه میشم.

ROMANIZATION

1. eh rezhim-e jadid emtehaan mikonam.
2. miram roo taraazoo.
3. roo baalaa bordan-e sookht-o saazam kaar mikonam.
4. do-baar too hafteh varzesh mikonam.
5. har rooz deraaz-neshast miram.
6. har rooz shenaa miram.
7. yeh chekaap anjaam midam.
8. aab namak gheghereh mikonam.
9. mikhaam sarmaa nakhoram.
10. sa'y mikonam bishtar sabzijaat bekhoram.
11. ghazaa-haai keh mineraal daareh mikhoram.
12. vitaamin ziyaad mikhoram.
13. ghazaa-haaye fibr-daar hatman mikhoram.
14. ghazaa-haai keh karbohidraat-e kami daran mikhoram.
15. ghazaa-haai keh porotein ziyaad daran mikhoram.
16. az pel-lehaa mid-doam baalaa.
17. sa'y mikonam rezhim-e mote'aadeli daashteh baasham.
18. kaalori mishmoram.
19. shirini-jaat kamtar mikhoram.
20. taslim-e vasvaseh misham.

ENGLISH

1. I try a new diet.
2. I step on the scales.
3. I work on increasing my metabolism.
4. I exercise twice a week.
5. I do sit-ups every day.
6. I do push-ups every day.
7. I get a health checkup.
8. I gargle with salt water.
9. I want to avoid catching a cold.
10. I try to eat more vegetables.
11. I eat food with a lot of minerals.
12. I take a lots of vitamins.
13. I make sure to eat a lot of fiber.
14. I eat low-carb foods.
15. I eat high-protein foods.
16. I run up the stairs.
17. I try to have a balanced diet.
18. I count calories.
19. I cut back on sweets.
20. I give in to temptation.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
وسوسه	vasvaseh	temptation	noun
پروتئین	protein	protein	noun
پله	pel-leh	stair	noun
رژیم	rezhim	diet	noun
مینرال	mineraal	mineral	noun
رژیم متعادل	rezhim-e moteaadel	balanced diet	noun
ترازو	taraazoo	scales	noun
شنا	shenaa	push-up	noun
کالری	kaalori	calorie	noun
چکاپ	chekaap	check-up	noun
سوخت و ساز	sookht-o saaz	metabolism	noun
درازنشست	deraaz-neshast	sit-up	adjective
سبزی	sabzi	vegetable	noun
ویتامین	vitaamin	vitamin	noun
کربوهیدرات	karbo hidraat	carbohydrate	noun
غرغره کردن	gher ghereh kardan	gargle	verb
فیبر	fibr	fiber	noun
ورزش کردن	varzesh kardan	exercise	verb
سرماخوردگی	sarmaakhordegi	cold	noun
شیرینی جات	shirinijaat	sweets	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>هرکسی باید هر از گاهی چکاپ انجام بده.</p> <p><i>har kasi baayad har az gaahi chekaap anjaam bedeh.</i></p> <p>Everybody should get a checkup once in a while.</p>	<p>برای سرماخوردگی باید قرص مسکن خورد.</p> <p><i>Baraye sarmakhordegi bayad ghorse mosaken khord.</i></p> <p>"You should take painkillers when you catch a cold."</p>
--	---

آیا شیرینی جات سنتی ایران را می شناسید؟

Aayaa shirinijat-e sonnati-ye iraan raa mishenaasid?

Do you know the traditional Iranian sweets?

LESSON NOTES

Top 400 Activities: Daily Routines in Persian #7

Hanging Out

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian
Main
Romanization
English
Vocabulary
Sample sentences

#7

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. یه جا برای دیدن دوستانم پیدا می کنم.
2. سعی می کنم دیر نکنم.
3. هوس کباب پزون کنار دریا دارم.
4. یه عالمه لباس تو یه حراج میخرم.
5. لباسارو تو اتاق پرو امتحان می کنم.
6. با مغازه دار چونه میزنم.
7. تو یه کافه یه قهوه میخورم.
8. دوستانمو تو مرکز خرید میبینم.
9. وسایل قدیممو تو بازار کهنه فروشا میفروشم.
10. یه سرگرمی جدید پیدا میکنم.
11. یه فیلم جدید میبینم.
12. یه بلیط سینمای مجانی بهم میدن.
13. سوار ترن هوایی میشم.
14. رستوران ساعت ۱۰ صب باز می کنه.
15. برجسب قیمتو چک میکنم.
16. از فروشنده درمورد قیمت سوال می پرسم.
17. تو محله قدم میزنم.
18. تو شکلات فروشی یه نمونه امتحان میکنم.
19. دنبال فعالیت های داوطلبانه میگردم.
20. یه دوربین دیجیتال میخرم.

ROMANIZATION

1. ye jaa baraaye didan-e doostaam peydaa mikonam.
2. sa'y mikonam dir nakonam.
3. havas-e kabaab pazoon kenaar-e daryaa daraam.
4. yeh aalameh lebaas too yeh haraaj mikharam.
5. lebaasa-ro too otaagh-e porov emtehaan mikonam.
6. baa maghaazeh dar chooneh mizanam.
7. too yeh kaafeh yeh ghahveh mikhoram.
8. doostaam-o too markaz-kharid mibinam.
9. vasaayel-e ghadimi-mo too baazaar-e kohneh-foorooshaa mifroosham.
10. yeh sargarmiyeh jadid peydaa mikonam.
11. yeh film-e jadid mibinam,
12. yeh belit-e sinamaay-e maj-jaani behem midan.
13. savaar-e teran havaai misham.
14. restooran saa'at dah-e sob baaz mikonam.
15. barchasb-e gheymat-o chek mikonam.
16. dar mored-e gheymat az fooorooshandeh so'aal miporsam.
17. too mahal-leh ghadam mizanam.
18. too shokolaat fooorooshi yeh nemooneh emtehaan mikonam.
19. donbaal-e fa'aaliyat-haaye daavtalabaaneh migardam.
20. yeh doorbin-e digitaal mikharam

ENGLISH

1. I choose a place to meet up with my friend.
2. I try not to be late.
3. I crave a barbecue on the beach.
4. I buy a lot of clothes at a sale.
5. I try on the clothes in a fitting room.
6. I bargain with the shopkeeper.
7. I have a coffee at a café.
8. I meet my friends at the mall.
9. I sell old clothes at a flea market.
10. I start a new hobby.
11. I watch a new movie.
12. I get a free movie ticket.
13. I ride on a roller coaster.
14. The restaurant opens at 10 a.m.
15. I check the price tag.
16. I ask the sales clerk about the price.
17. I walk around the neighborhood.
18. I try a sample at the chocolate store.
19. I look for volunteer activities.
20. I get a digital camera.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
دوربین دیجیتال	doorbin-e digitaal	digital camera	noun
فعالیت های داوطلبانه	fa'aaliyat-haaye daavtalabaaneh	volunteer activities	noun
برچسب قیمت	barchasb-e gheyamat	price tag	noun
فروشنده	Forooshandeh	salesperson	noun
جا	jaa	place	noun
فیلم	film	movie	noun
محله	mahal-leh	neighborhood	noun
دیر	dir	late	adverb
چانه زدن	chaaneh zadan	bargain	noun
شکلات	shokolaat	chocolate	noun
کافه	kaafe	cafe	noun
کباب پزون	kabaab pazoon	barbecue	verb
اتاق پرو	otaagh-e porov	fitting room	noun
سرگرمی	sargarmi	hobby	noun
بلیط	belit	ticket	noun
رستوران	Restoraan	restaurant	noun
مرکز خرید	markaz-e kharid	mall	noun
ترن هوایی	teran havaa'i	roller coaster	noun
حراج	haraaj	sale	noun
بازار کهنه فروشان	bazaar-e kohneh-foorooshaan	flea market	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>اکثر فیلم های سینمایی روی فیلم تولید می شود.</p> <p><i>aksar-e filmhaaye sinamaai rooye film tolid mishavad.</i></p> <p>Most movies are produced on film.</p>	<p>فیلم مستند</p> <p><i>film-e mostanad</i></p> <p>documentary film</p>
<p>وقتی جوان بودم خیلی فیلم انیمیشن تماشا می کردم.</p> <p><i>vaqti javaan boodam kheili film-e animeyshen tamaashaa mikardam.</i></p> <p>I used to watch a lot of animation films when I was young.</p>	<p>اون تو فیلم جدید وودی آله.</p> <p><i>oon too film-e jadid-e woodi aalen-eh.</i></p> <p>He's in the new Woody Allen movie.</p>
<p>بعد از دبیرستان یه فیلم خوب ندیدم.</p> <p><i>ba'd az dabirestaan yeh film-e khoob nadidam</i></p> <p>We haven't watched a good movie since high school.</p>	<p>او همیشه دیر به کلاس می رسد.</p> <p><i>oo hamishe dir be kelaas miresad.</i></p> <p>He is always late for class.</p>

<p>برای تغییر عادت‌های بدم خیلی دیر بود.</p> <p><i>baraaye taqyir-e aadathaaye badam kheili dir ast.</i></p> <p>It was too late for me to change my bad habits.</p>	<p>شما همیشه دیر به سر کار می‌آیید.</p> <p><i>shomaa hamishe dir be sar-e kaar mi aayid.</i></p> <p>You are always late for work.</p>
<p>بعضی افراد بدون شکلات نمیتوانند زندگی کنند.</p> <p><i>baezi afraad bedoon shokolaat nemitavaanand zendegi konand.</i></p> <p>Some people just can't live without chocolate.</p>	<p>کافه‌های خیابان من اوائل بهار باز کردند.</p> <p><i>kaafe haaye khiaabaan-e man avaael-e bahaar baaz kardand.</i></p> <p>The cafes in my street opened in early spring.</p>
<p>هر کسی برای سالم و باتمركز ماندن به يك سرگرمی نیاز دارد.</p> <p><i>har kasi baraaye saalem va baa tamarkoz maandan be yek sargarmi niaaz daarad.</i></p> <p>Everybody needs a hobby to stay healthy and focused.</p>	<p>بلیط خود را قبل از سوار شدن به قطار در ایستگاه تهیه کنید.</p> <p><i>belit-e khod raa qabl az savaar shodan be qataar dar istgaah tahiye konid.</i></p> <p>Get your ticket at the station before getting on the train.</p>
<p>رزرو بلیط</p> <p><i>rezerv-e belit</i></p> <p>reserve a ticket</p>	<p>بلیط هواپیما گران شده است.</p> <p><i>Bilit havapyma geroon shod.</i></p> <p>"The price of airline tickets has risen."</p>
<p>رستوران مورد علاقه من سابوی است.</p> <p><i>restoraan-e mored-e alaaqeye man saabvey ast.</i></p> <p>My favorite restaurant is Subway.</p>	<p>محیط رستوران اخیرا مشتریهای زیادی را به سمت خود کشیده است.</p> <p><i>mohit-e restooraan akhiran moshtarihaaye ziaadi raa be samt-e khod keshideh ast.</i></p> <p>The atmosphere of the restaurant has drawn a lot of customers lately.</p>
<p>ظهر در رستوران غذا خوردیم.</p> <p><i>Zohr dar restaurant ghaza khordim.</i></p> <p>We ate in the restaurant at noon.</p>	<p>انواع زیادی از فروشگاه‌ها در مرکز خرید وجود دارد.</p> <p><i>anvaa-e ziaadi az forooshgahhaa dar markaz-e kharid vojood daarad.</i></p> <p>There are a large variety of stores at the mall.</p>
<p>مرکز خرید</p> <p><i>markaz-e kharid</i></p> <p>shopping mall</p>	<p>از مرکز خرید دیدن کنید.</p> <p><i>az markaz-e kharid didan konid.</i></p> <p>visit the shopping mall</p>
<p>مرکز خرید پر از مردم است.</p> <p><i>markaz-e kharid por az mardom ast.</i></p> <p>The mall is full of people.</p>	<p>فروشگاه همه چیز را به حراج گذاشته است.</p> <p><i>forooshgaah hame chiz raa be haraaj gozaashte ast.</i></p> <p>The store has everything on sale.</p>

LESSON NOTES

Top 400 Activities: Daily Routines in Persian #8

Dining Out

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian
Main
Romanization
English
Vocabulary
Sample sentences

#8

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. به میز تو رستوران رزرو میکنم.
2. گارسنو صدا میکنم.
3. به منویه نگاهی میندازم.
4. به نوشیدنی سفارش میدم.
5. از بوفه به عالمه غذا برداشتم.
6. به دیس از پنیرای مختلف سفارش میدم.
7. حریص میشم و به عالمه غذا سفارش میدم.
8. تو کافه تریا اتفاقی یکی از دوستانمو دیدم.
9. میگم به بشقاب دیگه بیارن.
10. چنگالم میفته.
11. تولد بچه هامو تو رستورانای خوب جشن میگیرم.
12. به آجوی محلی امتحان میکنم.
13. سس میریزم رو سالادم.
14. از پارچ آب میریزم.
15. برای غذای اصلی ماهی سفارش میدم.
16. میگم بازم برنج بیارن.
17. به دسر سفارش میدم.
18. دنبال خلال دندون میگردم.
19. میگم صورتحسابو بیارن.
20. با کارت اعتباری پرداخت میکنم.

ROMANIZATION

1. yeh miz too restooraan rezerv mikonam.
2. gaarson-o sedaa mikonam.
3. beh beh menoo yeh negaahi mikonam.
4. yeh nooshidani sefaresh midam.
5. az boofeh yeh aalameh ghazaa bardaashtam.
6. yeh dis az paniraay-e mokhtalef sefaresh midam.
7. haris misham o yeh aa'lameh ghazaa sefaresh midam.
8. too kaafeh-teriyaa et-tefaaghi yeki az doostaamo didam.
9. migam yeh bshghaab-e dige biyaaran.
10. changaalam miyofteh.
11. taval-lode bach-chehaam-o too restooraanaay-e khoob jashn migiram.
12. yeh aabjooy-e mahal-li emtehaan mikonam.
13. sos mirizam roo saladam.
14. az paarch aab mirizam.
15. baraay-e ghazaay-e asli maahi sefaresh midam.
16. migam baazam berenj biyaaran.
17. yeh deser sefaresh midam.
18. donbaal-e khalaal dandoon migardam.
19. migam soorat-hesaab-o biyaaran.
20. baa kaart-e etebaari pardaakht mikonam.

ENGLISH

1. I book a table at the restaurant.
2. I call the waiter.
3. I take a look at the menu.
4. I order a drink.
5. I get a lot of food at the buffet.
6. I order an assorted cheese platter.
7. I get greedy and order a lot of dishes.
8. I bump into a friend of mine at the cafeteria.
9. I ask for another plate.
10. I drop my chopsticks.
11. I celebrate my children's birthdays at nice restaurants.
12. I try a local beer.
13. I put dressing on my salad.
14. I pour water from the pitcher.
15. I order fish for the main course.
16. I ask for more rice.
17. I order a dessert.
18. I look for toothpicks.
19. I ask for the bill.
20. I pay by credit card.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
غذای اصلی	qazaaye asli	main course	noun
برنج	berenj	rice	noun
رزرو کردن	rezerv kardan	book	verb
جشن گرفتن	jashn gereftan	celebrate	verb
دسر	deser	dessert	noun
گارسن	gaarson	waiter	noun
دیس	dis	platter	noun
خلال دندان	khelaal dandaan	toothpick	noun
حریص	haris	greedy	adjective
منو	meno	menu	noun
بوفه	boofeh	buffet	noun
چنگال	changaal	fork	noun
آبجو	aabjo	beer	noun
پارچ	paarch	pitcher	noun
کافه تریا	kaafe teriyaa	cafeteria	noun
سالاد	saalaad	salad	noun
نوشیدنی	nooshidani	drink	noun
بشقاب	boshqaab	plate	noun
صورتحساب	Soorat hesaab	bill	noun
کارت اعتباری	kaart-e etebaari	credit card	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>پیش غذای گوشتی</p> <p><i>pish ghazaa-ye gooshti</i></p> <p>meat entrée</p>	<p>امروز باید خیلی برنج بخرم.</p> <p><i>emrooz baayad kheyli beranj bek Haram.</i></p> <p>Today I should buy a lot of rice.</p>
<p>اگر هر روز دسر بخورید چاق خواهید شد!</p> <p><i>agar har rooz deser bokhorid chaaq khaahid shod!</i></p> <p>If you eat dessert every day you are going to get fat!</p>	<p>شما می توانید برای دیدن اینکه یک کیک پخته یا نه از خلال دندان استفاده کنید.</p> <p><i>shomaa mitavaanid baraaye didan-e in ke yek keyk pokhte yaa na az khelaal-e dandaan estefaade konid.</i></p> <p>You can test to see if a cake is done baking using a toothpick.</p>
<p>خلال دندان چوبی</p> <p><i>khelaal dandaan-e choobi</i></p> <p>wooden toothpick</p>	<p>چنگال روی بشقاب کثیف قرار دارد.</p> <p><i>changaal rooye boshqaab-e kasif qaraar daarad.</i></p> <p>The fork is on the dirty plate.</p>

<p>چنگال روی بشقاب</p> <p><i>changaal rooye boshqaab</i></p> <p>fork on a plate</p>	<p>دوست داشتم آجو بنوشم.</p> <p><i>doost daashtam aabjo benoosham.</i></p> <p>I'd like to have a beer.</p>
<p>همیشه در تابستان یک پارچ چای سرد روی میز من قرار دارد.</p> <p><i>hamishe dar taabestaan yek parch chaay-e sard rooye miz-e man qaraar daarad.</i></p> <p>In the summer a pitcher of iced tea is always on my table.</p>	<p>پارچ چای سرد</p> <p><i>paarch-e chaaye sard</i></p> <p>iced tea pitcher</p>
<p>پارچ آب</p> <p><i>paarch-e aab</i></p> <p>pitcher of water</p>	<p>پارچو بذار تو (پارچ را بگذار در) یخچال.</p> <p><i>paarch-o bezaar too (paarch raa begozaar dar) yakhchaal.</i></p> <p>Put the pitcher back in the fridge.</p>
<p>کافه تریا در انتهای خیابان است ولی ممکن است تا حالا بسته شده باشد.</p> <p><i>kaafe teriyaa dar entehaaye khiyaabaan ast vali momken ast taa haalaa baste shode baashad.</i></p> <p>The cafeteria is at the end of the street, but it may already be closed.</p>	<p>بعد از خوردن گوشت برای چندین روز او می‌توانست فقط به سالاد فکر کند.</p> <p><i>baed az khordan-e goosht baraaye chandin rooz oo mitavaanest faghat be saalaad fekr konad.</i></p> <p>After eating meat for several days he could only think about salad.</p>
<p>بشقاب کثیف است.</p> <p><i>boshqaab kasif ast.</i></p> <p>This plate is dirty.</p>	<p>بشقاب کاغذی</p> <p><i>boshqaab-e kaaqazi</i></p> <p>paper plate</p>
<p>بشقاب سفید</p> <p><i>boshqaab-e sefid</i></p> <p>white plate</p>	<p>چنگال روی بشقاب</p> <p><i>changaal rooye boshqaab</i></p> <p>fork on a plate</p>
<p>گارسون، صورتحساب!</p> <p><i>Gaarson, Soorathesaab!</i></p> <p>Waiter, the bill!</p>	<p>صورتحساب غذا کمتر از ده دلار بود.</p> <p><i>Soorathesaab-e qazaa kamtar az dah dolaar bood.</i></p> <p>The bill for the food was less than ten dollars.</p>
<p>صورتحساب ارزان</p> <p><i>Soorathesaab-e arzaan</i></p> <p>inexpensive bill</p>	<p>پرداخت با کارت اعتباری</p> <p><i>pardaakht baa kaart-e etebaari</i></p> <p>pay by credit card</p>
<p>شماره کارت اعتباری</p> <p><i>shomaare kaart-e etebaari</i></p> <p>credit card number</p>	<p>کارت اعتباری قبول می‌کنین؟</p> <p><i>kaart-e e'tebaari qabool mikonin?</i></p> <p>Do you take credit cards?</p>

LESSON NOTES

Top 400 Activities: Daily Routines in Persian #9

Relaxing at Home

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian
Main
Romanization
English
Vocabulary
Sample sentences

#9

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. شمع معطر روشن میکنم.
2. جای گیاهی درست میکنم.
3. هاردمو مرتب می کنم.
4. یه دسته ورقو بر میزنم.
5. چن تا کاردستی درست میکنم.
6. یه بازی تخته ای رو میبرم خونه دوستم.
7. یه قوطی باز میکنم.
8. میرم بقالی.
9. پیک زنگ درو میزنه.
10. یه پیتزا سفارش میدم.
11. تظاهر میکنم خونه نیستم.
12. با دوستانم گیم بازی میکنم.
13. کنترل تلویزینو گم میکنم.
14. تلویزیون کابلی تماشا میکنم.
15. با بچه هام سر گرفتن کنترل می جنگم.
16. آنلاین چن تا فیلم اجاره میکنم.
17. کانالو عوض میکنم.
18. قسمت آخر و امشب میبینم.
19. برای پسرم کتاب میخونم.
20. از بازی یه بازیگرا انتقاد میکنم.

ROMANIZATION

1. sham-e mo'at-tar roshan mikonam
2. chaay-e giyaahi dorost mikonam.
3. haardam-o morattab mikonam.
4. yeh dasteh varagh-o bor mizanam.
5. chan-taa kaardasti dorost mikonam.
6. yeh baazi-ye takhtei ro mibaram khooneye doostam.
7. yeh ghooti baaz mikonam.
8. miram bagh-ghaali.
9. peyk zang-e dar-o mizaneh.
10. yeh pitzaa sefaaresh midam.
11. tazaahor mikonam khooneh nistam.
12. baa doostaam geym baazi mikonam.
13. kontorol-e televiziyon-o gom mikonam.
14. televiziyon-e kaabli tamaashaa mikonam.
15. ba bach-chehaam sar-e gerftane kontorol mijangam.
16. aanlaayn chan-taa film ejaareh mikonam.
17. kaanaalo avaz mikonam.
18. ghesmat-e akharo emshab mibinam.
19. baraay-e pesaram ketaab mikhonam.
20. az baaziy-e yeh baazigar enteghaad mikonam.

ENGLISH

1. I light a scented candle.
2. I make herbal tea.
3. I clean up my hard disk.
4. I shuffle a deck of cards.
5. I do some crafts.
6. I take a board game to my friend's.
7. I open a can of beer.
8. I go to the grocery
9. The delivery man rings the bell.
10. I order a pizza.
11. I pretend not to be at home.
12. I play video games with my friends.
13. I lose the TV remote control.
14. I watch cable TV.
15. I fight with my children over the remote control.
16. I rent some movies online.
17. I change the channel.
18. I watch the final episode tonight.
19. I read to my son.
20. I criticize an actor's performance.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
کنترل از راه دور	Kontorol az raah-e door	remote control	phrase
اجاره کردن	ejaareh kardan	rent	noun
شمع	sham'	candle	noun
تظاهر کردن	tazaahor kardan	pretend	verb
کانال	kaanaal	channel	noun
چای گیاهی	chaay-e giyaahi	herbal tea	noun
بازی تخته ای	bazi-ye takhtei	board game	noun
قسمت آخر	ghesmat-e akhar	final episode	noun
قوطی	qooti	can	noun
هارد	haard	hard disk	noun
کاردستی	kaardasti	craft	noun
پیتزا	pitza	pizza	noun
گیم	game	video game	noun
تلویزیون کابلی	telviziyon-e kaabli	cable TV	noun
بقالی	bagh-ghaali	grocery	noun
گم کردن	gom kardan	lose	verb
ورق	varagh	card	noun
پیک	peyk	delivery man	noun
کتاب	Ketaab	book	noun
بازیگر	baazigar	actor	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>تعداد شمع‌های روی کیک نشان دهنده تعداد سال است.</p> <p><i>te'daad-e shame' haaye rooye keik neshaan dahandeh te'daad-e saal ast.</i></p> <p>The number of candles on a cake shows the number of years.</p>	<p>او با استفاده از قوطیهای سودا صنایع دستی میسازد.</p> <p><i>oo baa estefaadeh az ghootihaaye sodaa sanaaye' dasti misaazad.</i></p> <p>She does handicraft with soda cans.</p>
<p>پیتزا با پنیر اضافی سفارش دادم.</p> <p><i>pitzaa ba panir-e ezaafi sefaaresh daadam.</i></p> <p>I ordered pizza with extra cheese.</p>	<p>این کتاب خیلی بامزه اس.</p> <p><i>in ketaab kheily ba maz-zas.</i></p> <p>This book is pretty funny.</p>
<p>چند تا کتاب خریدید؟</p> <p><i>chand ta ketaab kharidid?</i></p> <p>How many books did you buy?</p>	<p>من با یک بازیگر مشهور در مراسم نمایش اولیه دست دادم.</p> <p><i>man baa yek baazigar mashhoor dar maraasem namaayesh awalieh dast daadam.</i></p> <p>I shook hands with a famous actor at a premiere.</p>

LESSON NOTES

Top 400 Activities: Daily Routines in Persian #10

At Night

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Persian
Main
Romanization
English
Vocabulary
Sample sentences

#10

DIALOGUE - PERSIAN

MAIN

1. درو باز میکنم.
2. وارد آپارتمان میشم.
3. چراغو روشن میکنم.
4. رو کاناپه استراحت میکنم.
5. اخبارو مبینم.
6. دوستانمو برای شام دعوت میکنم.
7. شامو آماده میکنم.
8. بچه هارو می خوابونم.
9. برای بچه هام داستان شب میخونم.
10. جکای خنده دار برای دوستانم تعریف میکنم.
11. یه لیوان شراب میریزم.
12. شراب میریزم رو میز.
13. به هم ریختگیو تمیز میکنم.
14. با رئیسم به گفتگوی تلفنی داشتم.
15. در مورد روزم صحبت میکنم.
16. برای فردا برنامه میریزم.
17. یه حمام گرم میگیرم.
18. موهامو با سشوار خشک میکنم.
19. گوشیمو شارژ میکنم.
20. حدود نصفه شب میرم بخوابم.

ROMANIZATION

1. dar-o baaz mikonam.
2. vaared-e apaartemaan misham.
3. cheraagh-o roshan mikonam.
4. roo kaanaapeh esteraahat mikonam.
5. akhbaar-o mobinam.
6. doostaam-o baraa shaam da'vat mikonam.
7. shaam-o aamaadeh mikonam.
8. bach-chehaa-ro mikhaaboonam.
9. baraa bach-chehaam daastan-e shab mikhoonam.
10. jokaay-e khandeh daar baraa doostaam ta'rif mikonam.
11. yeh livaan sharaab mirizam.
12. sharaab mirizam roo miz.
13. beh-ham-rikhtegiy-o tamiz mikonam.
14. baa ra'isam yeh goftegooy-e telefoni daashtam.
15. dar mored-e roozam sohbat mikonam.
16. baraay-e fardaa barnaameh mirizam.
17. yeh ham-maam-e garm migiram.
18. moohaam-o baa seshooaar khsoh mikonam.
19. gooshim-o shaarzh mikonam.
20. hoodood-e nesf-e shab miram bekhaabam.

ENGLISH

1. I unlock the door
2. I enter the apartment
3. I turn on the light
4. I relax on the sofa
5. I watch the news.
6. I invite friends over for dinner.
7. I prepare dinner.
8. I put the children to bed.
9. I tell bedtime stories to my children.
10. I tell hilarious jokes to my friends.
11. I pour a glass of wine.
12. I spill wine on the table.
13. I clean up the mess.
14. I have a conversation with my boss on the phone.
15. I talk about my day.
16. I plan for tomorrow.
17. I take a hot bath.
18. I dry my hair with a hair dryer.
19. I charge my cell.
20. I go to sleep around midnight.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
نصفه شب	nesfeh shab	midnight	noun
شارژ کردن	shaarzh kardan	charge	noun
سشوار	seshovaar	hair dryer	noun
حمام	hamaam	bath	noun
برنامه ریختن	barnaameh rikhtan	plan	verb
روز	rooz	day	noun
در	dar	door	noun
شراب	sharaab	wine	noun
آپارتمان	aapaartemaan	apartment	noun
دوست	Doost	friend	noun
شام	shaam	dinner	noun
چراغ	cheraagh	light	noun
دیدن	didan	watch	verb
جک	jok	joke	noun
میز	Miz	table	noun
گفتگو	goftegoo	conversation	noun
بچه	bachche	child	verb
به هم ریختگی	beh-ham-rikhtegi	mess	noun
کاناپه	kaanaape	sofa	noun
داستان	daastaan	story	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

معمولاً تو (در) تابستون (تابستان) از سشوار استفاده نمی‌کنم. <i>ma'moolan too (dar) taabestoon (taabestaan) az seshooaar estefaade nemikonam.</i> I usually don't use a hairdryer in the summer.	در تمام طول روز <i>dar tamaam-e tool-e rooz</i> all day long
امروز چه روزی است؟ <i>emrooz che roozi ast?</i> What day is it today?	روزها چکار می‌کنید؟ <i>rooz-haa chekaar mikonid?</i> What do you do during the day?
در ورودی <i>Dar-e voroodi</i> front door	در زدن <i>Dar zadan</i> knock on the door

<p>مرد دارد در ماشین را با سوچ باز می کند.</p> <p><i>Mard daarad dar-e maashin raa baa sooich baaz mikonad.</i></p> <p>The man is unlocking the car door with the key.</p>	<p>در بسته است.</p> <p><i>Dar baste ast.</i></p> <p>The door is closed.</p>
<p>مرد دارد در را می بندد.</p> <p><i>Mard daarad dar raa mibandad.</i></p> <p>The man is closing the door.</p>	<p>لطفا در را ببند، بیرون سر و صداست.</p> <p><i>lotfan dar raa beband, biroon sar o sedaast.</i></p> <p>Please close the door, it is loud outside.</p>
<p>شراب سفید</p> <p><i>sharaab-e sefid</i></p> <p>white wine</p>	<p>شراب قرمز را با گوشت و شراب سفید را با ماهی می نوشند.</p> <p><i>sharaab-e qermez raa baa goosht va sharaab-e sefid raa baa maahi minooshand.</i></p> <p>You drink red wine with meat, and white wine with fish.</p>
<p>شراب در داخل گلاس ریخته می شود.</p> <p><i>sharaab dar daakhel-e gilaas rikhte mishavad.</i></p> <p>Wine is being poured into the glass.</p>	<p>دو لیوان شراب قرمز و یک لیوان شراب سفید</p> <p><i>do livaan sharaab-e qermez va yek livaan sharaab-e sefid</i></p> <p>two glasses of red wine and one glass of white wine</p>
<p>یک لیوان شراب</p> <p><i>yek livaan sharaab</i></p> <p>glass of wine</p>	<p>مجتمع آپارتمانی</p> <p><i>mojtama'e aapaartemaani</i></p> <p>apartment complex</p>
<p>آپارتمان در شهر</p> <p><i>aapaartemaan dar shahr</i></p> <p>apartment in the city</p>	<p>اجاره آپارتمان چند است؟</p> <p><i>ejaare aapaartemaan chand ast?</i></p> <p>How much is the rent for the apartment?</p>
<p>من یک آپارتمان کوچک در شهر نیویورک دارم.</p> <p><i>man yek aapaartemaan-e koochak dar shahr-e nyoyork daaram.</i></p> <p>I have a small apartment in New York City.</p>	<p>من امروز آپارتمانم را تمیز کردم.</p> <p><i>man emrooz aapaartemaanam raa tamiz kardam.</i></p> <p>I cleaned my apartment today.</p>
<p>او به مدت دوازده سال در آن آپارتمان زندگی کرد.</p> <p><i>oo be modat-e davaazdah saal dar aan aapaartemaan zendegi kard.</i></p> <p>She lived in that apartment for twelve years.</p>	<p>من توانایی اجاره یک آپارتمان در مرکز شهر را ندارم.</p> <p><i>man tavaanaai-e ejaare-ye yek aapaartemaan dar markaz-e shahr raa nadaaram.</i></p> <p>I can't afford to rent an apartment in the city center.</p>
<p>اگر پول کافی داشتم یک آپارتمان در مرکز شهر می خریدم.</p> <p><i>agar pool kaafi daashtam yek aapaartemaan dar markaz shahr mikharidam.</i></p> <p>If I had enough money I would buy an apartment in the city center.</p>	<p>خانواده من شب ها همه با هم شام می خورند.</p> <p><i>khaanevaade man shabhaa hame baa ham shaam mikhorand.</i></p> <p>My family eats dinner together every night.</p>

<p>ما هر شب راس ساعت هفت شام می خوریم. <i>maa har shab ra's-e saaگat haft shaam mikhorim.</i> We have dinner at seven o'clock sharp each night.</p>	<p>چراغ را روشن می کنی؟ <i>cheraagh raa roshan mikoni?</i> Would you turn on the light?</p>
<p>ما روی میز آشپزخانه مشق هایمان را می نویسیم و بازی می کنیم. <i>Maa rooye miz-e aashpazkhaane mashqhaayemaan raa minevisim va baazi mikonim.</i> We do homework and play games at the kitchen table.</p>	<p>نشستن بر سر میز <i>neshestan bar sar-e miz</i> sit at the table</p>
<p>میز و صندلی آشپزخانه <i>miz o sandali-e aashpazkhaane</i> kitchen table and chairs</p>	<p>من کتابها را روی میز گذاشتم. <i>man ketaabhaa raa rooye miz gozaashtam.</i> I put the books on the table.</p>
<p>چیزی روی میز نگذارید. <i>cahizi rooye miz nagozarid.</i> Don't put anything on the table.</p>	<p>وقتی بچه بودم، هر روز با دوچرخه ام به مدرسه می رفتم. <i>vaqti bachche boodam, har rooz baa docharkhe-am be madrese miraftam.</i> When I was a child I used to ride my bike to school every day.</p>
<p>بچه ها در حیاط بازی می کنند. <i>bachche-haa dar hayaat baazi mikonand.</i> The children are playing in the yard.</p>	<p>مبل اتاق نشیمن <i>mobl-e otaaq-e neshiman</i> living room sofa</p>
<p>مبل قرمز <i>mobl-e qermez</i> red sofa</p>	<p>این مبل بسیار راحت است. <i>in mobl besyaar raahat ast.</i> This sofa is very comfortable.</p>